

Word Studies in the Epistle to the Hebrews

Volume One: Hebrews Chapter One

Robert H. Kreger B.A. B.R.E.

An expositional verse by verse study from the personal notes of Robert H. Kreger, pastor of the Metropolitan Bible Church, Berkley, Michigan.

Copyright 2012 by Robert H. Kreger. All rights reserved. Anyone may reproduce this material and distribute it, but it may not be sold under any circumstances whatsoever without the author's written permission

Preparation for Bible Study

Before you begin your Bible study, if you are a believer in the Lord Jesus Christ, be sure you have named your sins privately to God the Father.

If we confess (acknowledge, name) **our** (known) **sins, He is faithful and just and will forgive us our** (known) **sins and purify us from all** (unknown, or forgotten sins) **unrighteousness.** (1 John 1:9, NIV)

You will then be in fellowship with God, filled with the Holy Spirit, and ready to learn spiritual truths from the Word of God.

God is spirit, and his worshipers must worship in spirit (in the filling of the Holy Spirit) **and in truth** (Bible doctrine, spiritual truth from the Word of God). (John 4:24, NIV)

If you have never personally accepted the Lord Jesus Christ through faith, the issue is not naming your sins. The issue is faith alone in Christ alone.

Whoever believes in the Son has eternal life; but whoever rejects (refusing to place your faith in Jesus Christ personally) **the Son will not see life, for God's wrath remains on him.** (John 3:36, NIV)

Preface

This is not a book simply to be read. It is to be studied if the reader desires to learn Biblical truths. This is an exhaustive exposition of the Greek text of the Epistle to the Hebrews. It is designed to give the student of the Bible who does not know Greek some of the riches of the original text that cannot be discovered by simply reading an English translation.

This is the first in a series of volumes based on the author's 18 year study of the Epistle to the Hebrews. The King James Version is used as the starting point of all exegetical breakdown for each verse. But other translations are also used. Each verse is exegeted and retranslated to make it more understandable to the reader.

The contents of this book have been transcribed and edited from the audio recordings of the Epistle to the Hebrews by Robert H. Kreger. These audio recordings are available on request. Since the information in this book is taken from the author's audio lessons, the reader should be aware that there is some repetition of many important principles and concepts.

The author did not depend upon his knowledge alone, but relied on many other Greek Bible teachers and authorities to arrive at the corrected translation of each verse. Men, such as: Kenneth S. Wuest, A.T. Robertson, Marvin R. Vincent, R. B. Thieme, Jr., Marvin J. Rosenthal, Donald Grey Barnhouse, Arthur W. Pink and many more. A complete list of all the resources the author used is found in the acknowledgment section at the back of this book.

This book is intended for the Bible student who has little or no knowledge of Greek. Knowing a little Greek might be helpful, but not necessary. It is the author's desire that believers in Jesus Christ be made aware of the extraordinary riches found through the in-depth study of God's Word as found in the analysis of the original language.

The Epistle to the Hebrews is a very unique book in that the entire content is concerned with the situation in Jerusalem in the first century AD. The circumstances described in this epistle do not exist today, since the writer is using terms that describe the Jewish temple and its sacrifices and offerings.

The background focuses on Jews who have accepted Jesus Christ as their Messiah and have accepted the New Covenant to the church and then returned to the temple and continued to offer sacrifices under the Old Covenant.

It is the author's desire that this book would be a source of encouragement and spiritual enlightenment to all who read it. But most of all, that it would bring glory and honor to the Lord Jesus Christ and eternal praise to Him for His marvelous accomplishments on behalf of all of us. Amen.

R.H. Kreger
Pastor,
Metropolitan Bible Church

Dedicated to

Pastor William Goodwin, the man who led me to the Lord Jesus Christ on Easter Sunday, 1962. He not only led me to a saving knowledge of Jesus Christ but he set my feet on the path of Biblical study and in-depth learning of God's precious Word, a path I have traveled since the day I accepted Jesus Christ as my personal Savior. Pastor Goodwin's friendship, kindness, patience and instruction shown to me as a young Christian will forever be remembered, and I will be forever grateful to the Lord for bringing William Goodwin into my life.

Pastor Goodwin went to to be with the Lord on February 25, 2007.

Special Recognition

This book would not have been possible without the dedicated efforts of Marjorie Newell, a retired teacher and personal friend. Her very helpful suggestions and input were invaluable to me in my desire to see this book become available to the royal family of God.

Basic Greek Grammar Terms

1. TENSE. — Time and kind of action.
 - A. Present — generally continuous action at the present time.
 - B. Aorist — past tense, an action occurring in a point of time.
 - C. Aorist participle — usually denotes an action which precedes the action of the main verb in the sentence.
 - D. Imperfect — past tense referring to a continuous action in past time.
 - E. Future — action planned for a future time.
 - F. Perfect — completed action with finished results in present time.
 - G. Pluperfect — completed action with finished results in past time.
2. VOICE. — Relation of the verb to the subject.
 - A. Active — the subject produces the action.
 - B. Middle — the subject participates in the results of the action, or additional stress is laid upon the subject as producing the action, i.e., “He himself secured eternal redemption.” (Heb 9:12). This is also known as the “reflexive middle.”
 - C. Passive — the subject receives the action of the verb. This is the voice of GRACE.
3. MOOD. — Relation of the verb to reality.
 - A. Indicative — the mood of reality or certainty.
 - B. Subjunctive — the mood of potential or probability.
 - C. Optative — the mood of desire or possibility.
 - D. Imperative — the mood of command or volition.
4. OTHER VERBAL FORMS.
 - A. Infinitive — it is often used to express purpose or result.
 - B. Participle — it describes its subject as a doer of the action denoted by the verb.
5. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES (Begin with “if”)
 - A. First class conditional clause — If and it is true (Matt 4:6) – Reality.
 - B. Second class conditional clause — If and it is not true (Matt 4:9; John 4:10) – Unreality.
 - C. Third class conditional clause — Maybe it is true and maybe it is not true (I John 1:9) – Probability.
 - D. Fourth class conditional clause — I wish it were true but it is not true (Acts 17:27; I Peter 3:14 & 17;) – expresses the will or desire of the author.

Word Studies in New Testament
The Epistle to the Hebrews
Volume One - Hebrews Chapter One

Contents

Title.....	1
Preparation for Bible Study.....	2
Preface.....	3
Dedication.....	5
Definition of Some Greek Terms.....	6
Contents.....	7
Introduction.....	9
The Preeminence of Jesus Christ over Moses and all the prophets	10
Principles of I.C.E. teaching	11
Summary Introduction	11
Luke 21:20-24	17
Five Cycles of National Discipline	21
Hebrews chapter one verse one.....	32
Summary of the appearances of Jesus Christ in the Bible....	39
Tabernacle Floor Plan	47
Five principles of God Speaking	54
Contrasts between the prophet and the priest	57
Hebrews chapter one verse two.....	59
Summary principles of the phrase, "In these last days"	61
Daniel 9:24-27	65
Biblical Timeline	67
Doctrine of Heirship	71
Revelation 5:1-6	76
Timeline of End Time Events	85
Genesis 22:1-14;	86
Hebrews chapter one verse three.....	88
Doctrine of Light	89

Three things concerning the Bible	104
Doctrine of Purging	110
Summary principles regarding sin	115
Doctrine of the Ascension and Session	122
Hebrews chapter one verse four.....	138
Angelic summary	138
Jewish view of angels	140
Hebrews chapter one verse five.....	154
Hebrews chapter one verse six.....	167
Review of the Expanded Translation by the author	168
Principle of the firstborn	177
Hebrews chapter one verse seven.....	185
Hebrews chapter one verse eight.....	188
Hebrews chapter one verse nine.....	192
Hebrews chapter one verse ten.....	199
Doctrine of the Order of Beginnings	200
Timeline of God's Order of Beginnings	206
Hebrews chapter one verse eleven.....	211
Summary of the End of All Things	216
Hebrews chapter one verse twelve.....	219
Hebrews chapter one verse thirteen.....	222
Summary of quotations found in chapter one	222
Doctrine of Operation Footstool	225
Hebrews chapter one verse fourteen.....	237
Galatians 3:24	238
Comparing Heb 1:4 to Gal 3:24	240
Positional Truth Chart	243
Expanded Translation in Paragraph Form.....	246
Acknowledgments and Bibliography.....	247

HEBREWS

Chapter One

Introduction

Jesus Christ's preeminence or superiority is the subject of the book of Hebrews. Jesus Christ is superior to and more important than any Old Testament prophet. In fact, He is superior to and more important than all of the Old Testament prophets put together.

John 1:17 says **For the law was given through Moses; grace and truth came through Jesus Christ.** (NIV) Here grace and truth is contrasted with the law. When placed in contrast with the law, grace and truth are seen to be superior and have a much greater glory. To say that **grace and truth came through Jesus Christ** is to say **that believing you might have life through his name,** (John 20:31 KJV) because **grace reigns or is sovereign.....even unto eternal life through Jesus Christ** (Corrected translation of Rom 5:21). The fact that **"believing"** is the condition for receiving eternal life again shows that life is of grace; for faith and grace are inseparable. It is of faith, **"so that it may be by grace"** (Rom 4:16 NIV). The Bible teaches that life is through His name (Acts 4:12). His name refers to that which He is and what He did. Whatever God gives because of the merit of Christ is always of grace. In fact, it is the merit and work of Jesus Christ that is the basis for grace. The merit and work of each one of us is the basis of law. And the law is hard, cruel, inflexible, intolerant and not compassionate. God will curse all who attempt to follow it (Gal 3:10). That is why the law is not a part of the Christian life.

When we remember these three things: 1) the law as given through Moses is called **"the ministration of death"** (II Cor 3:7). 2) Under law, works replace grace (Rom 11:6), and finally, 3) under law, man stands before God in his own merit instead of that of Jesus Christ. When we keep these things in mind, it is very clear that law and grace are incompatible with each other. Where there is law, there is no grace, and where there is true grace, there is no law. Rom 11:6 says, **And if** (first class conditional clause, "if" and it is true) **by grace, then it is no longer by works** (law); **if it were, grace would no longer be grace.** (NIV)

Another thing that should be brought out here is that law was given through Moses, a mere human instrument, a member of the sinful human race. Not so with grace and truth. These came through Jesus Christ, who was both Son of man and Son of God. Jesus Christ and Moses are contrasted in other passages. For example Heb 3:3 tells us, **Jesus has been found worthy of greater glory** (honor) **than Moses, just as the builder of a house has greater glory** (honor) **than the house itself.** (NIV)

Hebrews 3:5-6, **Moses was faithful AS A SERVANT IN ALL GOD'S HOUSE.....but Christ is faithful AS A SON OVER GOD'S HOUSE.....** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

The preeminence of Jesus Christ over Moses and all the prophets is indicative of the preeminence of grace over law. The preeminence of grace over law can then be said to be:

GRACE		LAW
The creator	over	the creature
The divine	over	the sinful human
The spiritual	over	the flesh
The infinite	over	the finite
That which endures	over	that which passes away

Therefore, when Jesus Christ came at His First Advent, He fulfilled the law, then the law was set aside. The law has nothing to do with the Christian life under grace. Rom 6:14 tells us, **.....you are NOT UNDER LAW, BUT UNDER GRACE.** Gal 3:10, **“ALL who rely on observing the law are under a curse.....** Gal 3:11-12, **The righteous will live by faith, the law is not based on faith.** Gal 5:18, **But if you are led by the Spirit, you ARE NOT UNDER LAW.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author) Throughout the writings of the Apostle Paul, over and over again he tells his readers that the Mosaic law is not a part of the Christian life; if you desire to follow the Mosaic Law, then you are not following Christ. It is very important to understand this principle if you want your life to be all it can be for Jesus Christ.

Hebrews 1:1-4 (KJV)

- Vs 1: **God, who at sundry times and in divers manners spake in time past unto the fathers by the prophets,**
- Vs 2: **Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;**
- Vs 3: **Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high;**
- Vs 4: **Being made so much better than the angels, as he hath by inheritance obtained a more excellent name than they.**

Hebrews is one of those books that is almost impossible to interpret properly unless you have an understanding of Jewish history and background. Many of the things the writer talks about are impossible to duplicate today. For example, we could not commit the sins the writer of Hebrews condemns because there is no temple where we could offer sacrifices today. And many of the sins the writer of Hebrews mentions deal with the offerings and sacrifices of the Jewish temple. So we must look at the historical background.

This brings us to the concept of I.C.E. teaching. I.C.E teaching is the only way anyone can ever hope to understand any part of the Bible. I.C.E is an acronym for “**Isagogics**,” referring to historical background; “**Categories**,” referring to other parts of the Bible that teach the same thing, and “**Exegesis**,” referring to a word by word study of each verse. When these three things are accomplished, it is very easy to understand what the Bible is teaching in any particular passage.

The best way to get started in the book of Hebrews is to give you a summary introduction. This is going to be a very extensive introduction because Hebrews is a very extensive book, and you should take good notes so you can refer back to them as often as you need as we go through the book. Also, I am not going to repeat this introduction in every class. So it is important to get a basic understanding of this book based on its historical background (isagogics).

S U M M A R Y I N T R O D U C T I O N

1. Any serious attempt to understand the book of Hebrews must be based, not only upon careful exegesis (word by word study) of its text in the Greek, but it must also be based upon a study of the historical background and on the analysis of the book. All correct exegesis is based upon and checked out by analysis which is putting the historical background, categories, and exegesis together to arrive at the correct interpretation of the passage.

Analysis is to the exegete what a compass is to a mariner, or a radio beam is to an aviator. The two individuals named cannot hope to arrive at their destination without the aid of their instruments. In the same manner, no Bible teacher can hope to arrive at a correct interpretation of the book of Hebrews without constantly checking his position by its historical background, its categories, and its exegetical breakdown through analysis.

Therefore, before attempting the interpretation we must lay a comprehensive groundwork consisting of the historical background of the book. The reader can then check the interpretation of any particular detail by consulting the background, categories and the exegetical study through analysis. The interpretation that agrees with the analysis is correct, and that which does not agree is not correct. Therefore, the matter of correct interpretation is reduced to a science. This should help to eliminate all discussion as to one's theological background or personal views. We are interested in what the Bible teaches, not in theological viewpoints, and not in personal viewpoints.

2. The book of Hebrews is titled "The Preeminence of Jesus Christ." Preeminence means "having a paramount rank, dignity or importance; that which is superior, or has a super excellency." Jesus Christ is superior to and preeminent over everyone and everything.

From the very beginning of this book we are challenged by the bold stand taken by the writer. In Hebrews 1:1-4 we are told that Jesus Christ is superior to the prophets of the Old Testament and He is superior to all angels because He is the Son of God through whom God has spoken in this new dispensation. The Son is God's agent in creation and in grace. Philippians 2:5-11, **Your attitude should be the same as that of Christ Jesus: (6) Who, being in very nature God, did not consider equality with God something to be grasped, (7) but made himself nothing, taking the very nature of a servant, being made in human likeness. (8) And being found in appearance as a man, he humbled himself and became obedient to death – even death on a cross! (9) Therefore God exalted him to the highest place and gave him the name that is above every name, (10) that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, in heaven (all angels and humans), and on earth (all angels, humans and demons), and under the earth (all angels and humans), (11) and every tongue confess (acknowledge) Jesus Christ is Lord (κύριος – KURIOS meaning "deity." Jesus Christ is God), to the glory of God the Father. (NIV) (Explanation given by the author)**

John 1:1-18; **In the beginning was the Word and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. (2) He was with God in the beginning. (3) Through him all things were made: without him nothing was made that has been made. (4) In him was life, and that life was the light of men. (5) The light shines in the darkness, but the darkness has not understood it. (6) There**

came a man who was sent from God; his name was John (John the Baptist, John the Baptizer). (7) **He came as a witness to testify concerning that light, so that through him all men might believe.** (8) **He himself was not the light; he came only as a witness to the light.** (9) **The true light that gives light to every man was coming into the world.**

(10) **He was in the world, and though the world was made by him, the world did not recognize him.** (11) **He came to that which was his own** (Israel), **but his own did not receive him.** (12) **Yet to all who received him, to those who believed in his name, he gave the right** (and authority) **to become children of God –** (13) **children born not of natural descent, nor of human decision or a husband's will, but born of God.**

(14) **The Word became flesh** (incarnation) **and made his dwelling among us. We have seen his glory, the glory of the One and Only, who came from the Father, full of grace and truth.** (15) **John testifies concerning him. He cries out, saying, "This was he of whom I said, 'He who comes after me has surpassed me because he was before me.'"** (16) **From the fullness of his grace we have all received one blessing after another.** (17) **For the law was given through Moses; grace and truth came through Jesus Christ.** (18) **No one has ever seen God, but God the One and Only, who is at the Father's side, has made him known.** (NIV)

Col 1:15-20, **He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn over all creation.** (16) **For by him all things were created: things in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or powers or rulers or authorities;** (this refers to the various ranks of angels. Christ created the angels and gave them their authority and power. The Scripture is very clear that Jesus is not an angel, but the creator of angels. He is above the angels, who in fact worship Him and are under His authority. Jesus' relationship to the unseen world, like His relationship to the visible universe, proves that He is God.) **all things were created by him and for him.** (17) **He is before all things** (preexistence), **and in him all things hold together** (are sustained). (18) **And he is the head of the body, the church; he is the beginning and the firstborn from among the dead, so that in everything he might have the supremacy.** (19) **For God was pleased to have all his fullness dwell in him** (in the humanity of Jesus Christ), (20) **and through him to reconcile** (bring back) **to himself all things, whether things on earth or things in heaven, by making peace through his blood, shed on the cross** (the word

blood refers to His substitutionary spiritual death). (NIV) (Explanation provided by the author)

3. You cannot understand the book of Hebrews unless you understand the book of Leviticus, because the book of Hebrews is based upon the principles of the Levitical priesthood. But don't worry about your lack of understanding of Leviticus. By the time we get through Hebrews you should have a pretty good grasp of the book of Leviticus as well.
4. The book of Hebrews was authored by the Holy Spirit. He is the author of all the books of the Bible. The human writer of the book of Hebrews had a double background. He had a Greek background, and was an expert in the use of the Greek language. He also had a Jewish background, and was an expert in Jewish history and traditions.

His Greek Background: Ever since the time of Plato, five hundred years before the writing of the book of Hebrews, the Greeks had been haunted by the contrast between the real and the unreal, the seen and the unseen, the temporal and the eternal. It was the Greek idea that somewhere there was a real world of which this world was only a shadow and imperfect copy. Plato had the idea that somewhere there was a world of perfect forms and ideas or patterns, of which everything in this world was inferior. Plato said, "The Creator of the world had designed and carried out his work according to an unchangeable and eternal pattern of which this world is but a copy."

The thinkers of the ancient world all had this idea that somewhere there is a real world of which this one is only an imperfect reproduction. Here we can only guess and grope; here we can work only with copies and imperfect things. But in the unseen world there are the real and perfect things. To the Greek, the great task of this life was to get away from the shadows and the imperfections and to reach reality. This is exactly what the writer of the book of Hebrews is teaching: all your lives you have been trying to get from the shadows to the truth. That is just what Jesus Christ can enable you to do.

His Jewish Background: To the Jew it was always dangerous to come too near to God. God told Moses in Ex 33:20; **For no one may see me and live.** Jacob said in astonishment in Gen 32:30, **I have seen God face to face yet my life is preserved.** In Judges 13:22 when Manoah realized who his visitor had been, he said in terror to his wife: **We shall surely die, for we have seen God.** The great day of Jewish worship was the Day of Atonement. That was the one day of

all the year when the High Priest entered the Holy of Holies where the very presence of God dwelt. No man ever entered except the High Priest, and he entered only on that day. When he did, he was commanded not to linger in the Holy Place for very long. It was dangerous to enter the presence of God and, if a man stayed too long, he might be struck dead.

God, in His grace and in a way that was unmerited, approached the nation of Israel and offered her a special relationship with Himself. But this unique access to God was conditional on the observance by the people to the law He gave them. We can see this relationship being entered into and this law being accepted in the dramatic scene in Exodus 24:3-8.

So then, Israel had access to God only if she kept the law. To break the law was sin, and sin put up a barrier which blocked the way to God. It was to get around the barrier that the system of the Levitical priesthood and sacrifices were constructed. The law was given to make sin known to man (Rom 3:20; 7:7); every time a man sinned that was a reminder of the barrier that existed between God and man; the Levitical sacrifice was made; and the sacrifice was designed to open the closed way to God. But the experience of life proved that this was precisely what sacrifices could not do. Sacrifices had to be offered continually so man could keep the way to God open, but all these sacrifices could not do it in a permanent way.

What man needed was a perfect priest and a perfect sacrifice, someone qualified to bring to God a sacrifice which could once and for all open the way of access to Him. That, said the writer to the Hebrews, is exactly what Christ did. He is the perfect priest because He is not only perfect man but perfect God. In His manhood he can take man to God and in His Godhead he can take God to man. He has no sin. The perfect sacrifice he brings is the sacrifice of Himself, a sacrifice so perfect that it never needs to be made again. To the Jew the writer to the Hebrews says: "All your lives you have been looking for the perfect priest who can bring the perfect sacrifice and give you perfect access to God. You have Him in Jesus Christ and Him alone."

5. The human writer of the book of Hebrews. There are about five different views regarding the writer of Hebrews.
 - A. The first view is that Luke wrote Hebrews. This view was held by many in the first century because Luke, being a doctor, had an exceptional education with an excellent use of the classical Greek as well as the Koine Greek. This view was held by Calvin, mainly

because the Greek of the book of Hebrews is very polished. In some cases it is almost pure classical Greek. It is very interesting that the epistle that has the most information of Jewish background should also be the purist type of Greek. However, there is too much Jewish background in this epistle for it to be written by a Gentile, and Luke was a Gentile.

- B. The second view is that Clement of Rome wrote Hebrews. Eusebius (Church historian 260-340 AD) and Erasmus (Dutch Scholar 1466-1536 AD) held this view. At one point Origen (Greek writer and teacher in the early church 185-254 AD) said that "The book of Hebrews had Paul's thoughts, but that Clement of Rome wrote it." Again there is too much Jewish background for Clement of Rome.
- C. The third view is that Barnabas was the human writer. Barnabas was a Levite with a good Jewish background. He was also the mediator between Paul and the Jewish Christians. But a well-known person like Barnabas would not be obscure in this. However, even today Barnabas is considered by some scholars to be the leading contender.
- D. The fourth view, one held by Martin Luther (1483-1546 AD) was that Apollos wrote Hebrews. As a Jew from Alexandria, Egypt and well versed in the Old Testament he is obviously a contender. However, no ancient tradition or testimony exists in that direction.
- E. The fifth view is that Paul wrote Hebrews. In the negative sense it is not like Paul to omit his name. Also, the style of Hebrews appears to be so smooth, that it is almost a literary Greek, which was not Paul's style. Paul usually wrote in an elliptical and very rough style. Also, Paul usually quoted the Old Testament from the Hebrew text, but the writer of Hebrews did not quote Old Testament passages from the Hebrew text, but he quoted them from the Greek text. He quoted from the Septuagint, the Greek translation of the Old Testament. There are many Pauline ideas in the book of Hebrews, but the vocabulary is a little different from Paul's.

However, in the positive sense, the principle of Biblical numerology gives us evidence reinforcing the idea that Paul was the writer of Hebrews. E. W. Bullinger writes, "Of the 21

epistles of the New Testament 14 (2 X 7) are by Paul, and seven by other writers. These numbers line up with the principle of Biblical numerology. When we remove Paul among the possible writers of the book of Hebrews, there is at once a loss of harmony in the numerical value of the New Testament books. But when Paul is listed as the writer of Hebrews the numerical value is immediately restored.” (Quoted from Number in Scripture by E. W. Bullinger, page 26.)

In conclusion, the actual writer of Hebrews is unknown. As Origen, one of the early church fathers, summarized, “Only God knows for certain who wrote Hebrews.” Even though there is strong evidence in support of the Apostle Paul, there is still no proof. This brings us to a very important principle: “it is not the man who is important, it is the message that it presents that is important.” Whoever wrote the book of Hebrews was deliberately obscured by God the Holy Spirit. We will note various reasons as we study Hebrews.

6. The book of Hebrews was written around 67 AD, about three years before the destruction of Jerusalem by the Romans and the dispersion of the Jews. This book was the last warning to the Jews before their national destruction. The first warning came from the Lord Jesus Christ when He prophesied of it in Luke 21:20-24. Open your Bibles to Luke 21:20-24 and we will note the first prophecy, the first warning to the Jews about the Roman invasion of Israel and the destruction of Jerusalem.

Luke 21:20-24; (KJV)

Verses 20-24 are not included in the Olivet discourse as given in Matthew 24 and Mark 13. Two sieges of Jerusalem are in view in that one discourse.

Luke 21:20-24 refers to the siege by Titus in 70 AD when Jerusalem was destroyed, and verse 24 was literally fulfilled. But that siege of Jerusalem, with all of its horrors, only vaguely illustrates the final siege of Jerusalem at the end of the Jewish Age in the “Great Tribulation.” At that time the city will be under siege, but it will be delivered by the glorious appearing of Jesus Christ (Rev 19:11-21).

Vs 20: **And when ye shall see Jerusalem compassed with armies, then know that the desolation thereof is nigh.**

And when ye shall see - Aorist active subjunctive of the verb ὁράω – HORAO. Means “to see and understand.” To see with the eyes and understand with the mind. Jesus prophesied this in 30 AD and these things actually occurred in 70 AD.

AORIST TENSE refers to the point of time when the Roman armies actually invaded Judea, which was in 66 AD.

ACTIVE VOICE: believers produced the action of this verb of seeing this event.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: mood of potential. This tells us that not all believers in Jesus addressed saw this event. Some actually died before 70 AD.

Literally, “And when you see.”

Jerusalem compassed - Present passive participle of the verb κυκλόω – KUKLOO. Means “to surround, to be encircled.”

Literally, “And when you see Jerusalem surrounded with armies.”

The point of this statement by our Lord Jesus Christ to the Jews, is that, when you see the city of Jerusalem surrounded by armies, this is too late to be delivered, or rescued. In other words, you have reached the point of no return. You have reached the point where you cannot be rescued. You will die, or you will become a slave. And this will take place for one reason only: YOU HAVE REJECTED MY TRUTH!

Literally, “And when you see Jerusalem surrounded with armies.”

With armies - ὑπὸ στρατοπέδων – HUPO STRATOPEDON.

HUPO - preposition meaning “under the authority of.”

STRATOPEDON - means “an encamped army,” referring to a siege.

This refers to the Roman army, in fact it refers to the 5th, 10th and 12th legions. Three legions were used by Vespasian, and later on by his son Titus in surrounding Jerusalem.

In 165 BC the Jews won their independence, but they lost it in some measure to the Romans when Pompey invaded the land of Judea in 63 BC and took control. They lost all political control, but they maintained

their religious freedom. Pompey controlled Judea from 63 BC to about 40 BC, at which time Herod the Great was appointed by Rome to rule the entire area of Israel, known as Judea.

When Herod died in 4 BC, Judea became a Roman province with considerable autonomy until 66 AD. At that time Rome began to crack down on the Jewish revolt, and by 70 AD the country of Judea lost out completely. It was the Emperor Nero who was interested in crushing the Jews, but before this could happen he was killed and Vespasian became the emperor, and his son Titus took over the armies in Judea.

Literally, “And when you see Jerusalem surrounded with armies.”

Then know that the desolation thereof is nigh -

Then know - Aorist active imperative of γινώσκω – GINOSKO. Means “to know by observing it.”

The desolation - ἐρήμωσις – EREMOSIS. Means “devastation, complete destruction.”

Is nigh - Perfect active indicative of ἐγγίζω – EGGIZO. The perfect tense of this verb means “to come to pass with the result that it stands accomplished.” In other words, there is no changing it. The only thing that believers can do is to get out, and that’s what the Lord is going to say in verse 21.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 20: “And when you see Jerusalem surrounded with armies, then, at that time, you will know that complete devastation will result with no deliverance in sight.”

Vs 21: **Then let them which are in Judea flee to the mountains; and let them which are in the midst of it depart out; and let not them that are in the countries enter thereinto.**

Then - When the Romans armies invade and surround Jerusalem.

Let them which are in Judea - τότε οἱ ἐν τῇ Ἰουδαίᾳ – TOTE HOI EN TE IOUDAIA.

Which are - Not in the Greek text.

Literally, “Then, at that time, let them in Judea,” referring to those living in the province of Judea in southern Palestine.

Flee - Present active imperative of φεύγω – PHEUGO. Means “to get out and get out now, don’t waste any time, don’t look back, don’t think about it, just get away.” A.T. Robertson said that many Christians died fleeing from Jerusalem to a place called Pella because it was too late. Volume 2 page 259 of Robertson’s Word Pictures of the New Testament.

To the mountains - This refers to the mountains of Edom, Moab and Ammon, even as it will be in the Tribulation. These mountains are in southern Palestine.

And let them which are in the midst of it - This refers to those living in the city of Jerusalem itself.

Depart out - Present active participle of the verb ἐκχωρέω – EKCHOREO. Means, “to go out, to depart from, to flee,” and to do it quickly.

And let not them that are in the countries enter thereinto - Literally, “Do not allow them in the surrounding districts to enter in.” This means to enter Jerusalem.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 21: “Then, at that time, let them in Judea get away fast to the mountains; and allow them which are living in the city to quickly leave; and do not allow them from the surrounding districts to enter the city.” Why?

vs 22: **For these be the days of vengeance, that all things which are written may be fulfilled.**

For these be the days of vengeance - This refers to the 5th cycle of discipline of the destruction of the nation as described in Leviticus 26:27-46; Deuteronomy 28:49-67.

That all things which are written may be fulfilled -

That all things - Accusative neuter plural of πᾶς – PAS meaning “all or every.” The neuter gender is brought out by the word “things.”

Which are written - Perfect passive participle of the verb γράφω – GRAPHO. Literally, “Which have been written.” Written in Leviticus and Deuteronomy.

PERFECT TENSE tells us that it was written in the past in the Old Testament.

PASSIVE VOICE tells us that the Old Testament prophets received this information from God.

PARTICIPLE (circumstantial) which is used to denote the circumstances surrounding the idea of the main verb. This tells us that the 5th cycle of discipline is a principle that applies to all nations. Literally, "For these are the days of vengeance, in order that these things which have been written down be fulfilled."

The five cycles of national discipline should be reviewed here:

1. Loss of health, decline of national prosperity, terror, fear, death in combat and loss of personal freedoms due to negative volition toward Bible Doctrine (Leviticus 26:14-17).
2. Economic recession and depression, increased personal and individual discipline for negative volition in spite of the first warning (Leviticus 26:18-20).
3. Violence and breakdown of law and order; cities laid waste (Leviticus 26:21-22).
4. Military conquest and/or foreign occupation, scarcity of food (reduced to one-tenth of the normal supply), the separation of families (Leviticus 26:23-26).
5. Destruction of a nation due to maximum rejection of Biblical principles (Leviticus 26:27-39).

Quoted from the book "Reversionism" by R.B.Thieme, Jr., copyright 1977: page 95.

May be fulfilled - Aorist passive infinitive of the verb πληρόω – PLEROO. Means "completion, to fulfill." The completion or fulfillment of a prophecy that God has given.

AORIST TENSE: refers to the period of time concerning the siege of Jerusalem.

PASSIVE VOICE: the Jews received the 5th cycle of discipline, they received the destruction of their nation and the dispersion of their people.

INFINITIVE MOOD: mood of purpose. It was God's purpose to handle the Jews in this manner.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 22: "For these are the days of vengeance, in order that these things which have been written down will come to completion and be fulfilled."

vs 23: **But woe unto them that are with child, and to them that give suck, in those days! for there shall be great distress in the land, and wrath upon this people.**

But woe unto them that are with child - In other words, this is no time to have children.

And to them that give suck - This is no time to have babies who can't walk. It makes fleeing and escaping very difficult. And nursing mothers need good nutrition.

In those days - Referring to the days of national destruction.

For there shall be great distress in the land - This means famine and hunger, pressure and stress, adversity and suffering.

And wrath upon this people - In our context it refers to the Jews, but in principle it refers to any nation who fails to follow the laws of divine establishment that God has provided for all nations.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 23: "But woe to them that have young children, and to them who have nursing babies in those days. For there shall be great suffering in the land, and great judgment on this people."

vs 24: **And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations: and Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles, until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled.**

Verse 24 has a lot of future tenses to indicate some of the details. **"They shall fall.....they shall be led away.....Jerusalem shall be trodden down....."**

And they shall fall by the edge of the sword - This refers to military conquest. This means that many will be killed. Josephus, the Jewish historian of the first century, says that one million, one hundred thousand Jews were killed in the destruction of Jerusalem in

70 AD and 97,000 were taken away as slaves (volume 9). Most historians agree that Josephus exaggerated, but they all agree that the number was very large.

And shall be led away captive into all nations - This refers to the dispersion of the Jews. Just because a large number were killed, and a large number were taken away captive, does not mean that there were no Jews left in the land. There have always been Jews living in the land of Palestine. But the Jews lost their national entity. They lost their nation.

And Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled - The times of the Gentiles will start to close beginning with the Rapture and resurrection of all Church Age believers, and will actually come to an end seven years later at the Second Advent of Jesus Christ.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 24: "And they shall be killed by the edge of the sword, and they shall be led away as slaves to all nations, and Jerusalem shall be destroyed and controlled by the Gentiles until the times of the Gentiles are brought to completion."

This was the warning of our Lord to the Jews concerning the destruction of Jerusalem in 70 AD.

The book of Hebrews was actually the second warning.

We know from Hebrews 6:6 that the temple was still standing and its destruction had not yet occurred.

Therefore, the book of Hebrews was addressed to Jewish believers living in Jerusalem three years before the destruction of Jerusalem. These Jewish Christians had three years to advance to spiritual maturity and get out before the Roman armies came and brought destruction.

7. The eight-fold purpose of the book of Hebrews:
 - A. To warn believers regarding reversionism and negative attitudes toward the Word of God, to provide Bible doctrine to aid them in their spiritual recovery and to help them in their advance to spiritual maturity. At that time in history it was imperative that they recover their spiritual momentum. If they did not advance spiritually in a time of crisis they would forfeit their lives. Therefore, the administration of the sin unto death is concurrent with national judgment. ("The sin unto death" is

maximum divine discipline for the believer who fails to follow the plan of God and advance in his spiritual life.)

PRINCIPLE: There are certain times in history when you can't afford to be negative toward the Word of God because you will get caught in a trap.

- B. To deliver believers in Jerusalem from the catastrophe of the 5th cycle of discipline. To deliver them from national destruction.
- C. To clarify the issues of the angelic conflict, and the believer's relationship to this great spiritual warfare. The believers in Jerusalem were going to see a great deal of conflict. But they had to realize that they were in a double conflict. There is the obvious conflict with the Romans, but there was a greater conflict with a greater potential of disaster, the angelic conflict, in which all believers are involved. Believers are engaged in a spiritual warfare from the time they are saved. Other warfares and conflicts are only the spilling over from the great spiritual conflict. Even in time of peace you are at war, spiritually.

Note: "the angelic conflict is the invisible warfare between God and Satan, ignited by the prehistoric revolt of Satan and one-third of the angels, that continues as spiritual warfare throughout human history." (R. B. Thieme, Jr., The Integrity of God page 10.) The angelic conflict includes Satan's appeal of God's judgment of his rebellion. Therefore the sovereignty of God approved an appeal trial to run the course of human history. During this appeal trial God's sentence of His judgment on Satan and all fallen angels remains on hold until the course of human history is completed at the end of the Millennial kingdom, at which time Satan's appeal will be rejected by God and he, with all the fallen angels will be thrown into the lake of fire. In the first part of volume two I will explain this in greater detail when I cover the Doctrine of the Angelic Conflict.

- D. To lead believers to spiritual maturity through the learning and application of Bible doctrine in the filling of the Holy Spirit. The universal priesthood of the believer is supplied to every believer in the Church Age at the point of salvation in order to accelerate his attainment of spiritual maturity. Believers in Jesus Christ are not to dilly-dally along the way on the road to spiritual

maturity. They must become spiritually mature believers as quickly as possible. They can reach spiritual maturity from one and half years to three years depending on how much Bible doctrine they can take in. In times of disaster they can even take in concentrated doses of Bible doctrine which can cause them to grow even faster.

- E. To reveal the glory of the person of Jesus Christ and stimulate occupation with Christ while on earth. In other words, to develop love for God, which is Category one love. (Category two love is love for one's spouse, and category three love is love for friends). As soon as we talk about love for God, there is immediately a challenge in this field. When we get to Hebrews chapters 3 & 4 we will see that people talk about loving the Lord, but when it comes time to trust or to exercise the faith-rest technique they immediately demonstrate lack of love for the Lord.

Your capacity for loving Jesus Christ can be measured in terms of how you use the faith-rest technique. Faith is not work, but faith must have a working object, and there are three working objects in the faith-rest technique in the Christian life:

- (1) PROMISES: As a baby Christian you start out by believing God's promises. Anything that God says, any promise that God makes, that is enough for you, and that is perfect for spiritual babies.
- (2) PRINCIPLES OF BIBLE DOCTRINE: For those who become spiritually mature, simple promises are not enough. So you begin to build your life around principles of Bible doctrine.
- (3) THE LORD JESUS CHRIST: The object of the faith-rest technique is the Lord Jesus Christ. This ultimate trust in the Lord Jesus Christ only comes through the promises and doctrines found in and learned from the Word of God.

Therefore, you have three things working for you as the objects of your faith in the Christian life. Three working objects: promises, doctrines and the Lord Jesus Christ. The first two are necessary before you can have the third, which is occupation with Jesus Christ. Jesus Christ as the object of the faith-rest technique is impossible apart from a maximum knowledge of Bible doctrine.

I heard a story years ago about a tightrope walker who decided to stretch a cable across Niagara Falls and walk over the falls. He advertised extensively in the area newspapers about this upcoming event. Finally, the day came and a large crowd of curious bystanders had gathered to watch this man walk over Niagara Falls. The man used a balancing bar and walked over the falls on the cable and came back to the applause and cheers of the crowd. Next he walked over the falls without the balancing bar struggling against the wind currents that were prevalent near the falls. Again the crowd cheered and applauded. Then he placed about 200 lbs of rocks in a wheelbarrow and wheeled them across the falls and back again. The crowd really went wild with that stunt, but then the man asked the crowd how many of them believed he could place an individual in the wheelbarrow and take them across the falls and back again safely. Almost every hand went up.

Then he asked the crowd, "Who will be the first one to volunteer?" Immediately all of the hands went down. They all believed he could do it, but no one was willing to trust him.

In the same way many people believe that God through Jesus Christ has provided salvation, but very few will actually trust Him by believing in Him for their salvation. Believing and trusting are two sides of the same coin. God wants people to trust His Son, to believe in Him as their personal Savior, to put all their trust in Him and depend on Him totally. Then as believers in Jesus Christ God wants them to learn His Word and trust in the doctrines, principles and concepts found there. And the more they learn from the Word, the stronger their faith will become, and when their faith strengthens that will cause them to trust in the Lord even more. The learning and application of the Word of God is the greatest thing any believer in Jesus Christ can accomplish.

- F. To orient the believer to the grace principles of the universal priesthood of the believer: The universal priesthood of the believer is the spring from which rivers and fountains and lakes and oceans of grace orientation originate. God has found a way to work for you during the Church Age without compromising His perfect character. The Church Age is the intensified stage of the angelic conflict. As a believer priest, God has found a grace way to work for you, without you earning it or deserving it.

- G. To distinguish between the function of the Jewish dispensation and the Church Age. The reality of your priesthood and its function is never possible until you become a dispensationalist, recognizing the difference between the Church Age and the Age of Israel.
 - H. To relate the priesthood of the believer to every facet of the Christian way of life.
8. The book of Hebrews is a presentation of Christ, the Messiah, the author of a better system, greater than the one God made in the Old Testament. The old system was not bad or wrong; it was God-given and, therefore, good. But it was incomplete and preliminary. It actually set the stage for the better system. I Timothy 1:8 tells us, **We know that the law is good.** (NIV and KJV) (The Greek word for “good” is καλός – KALOS meaning “overtly good.”)

Romans 7:12 says, **So the law is holy, and the commandment holy, just and good.** (NIV) (Here the Greek word for “good” is ἀγαθός – AGATHOS meaning “good of intrinsic value.”)

As was stated previously, the overall theme of the book of Hebrews is the superiority, or the preeminence of Jesus Christ. He is better than anything that was before or anything to come. He is better than any Old Testament person, He is better than any Old testament institution, He is better than any Old Testament ritual, He is better than any Old Testament sacrifice and He is better than anyone and everything else.

The writer of Hebrews begins with the general superiority of Christ to everyone and everything. The writer of Hebrews discusses:

- The superiority of Christ over the prophets: Heb 1:1-3.
- The superiority of Christ over angels: Heb 1:4-14; 2:1-9.
- The superiority of Christ over Moses: Heb chapters 3 & 4.
- The superiority of Christ over Melchizedek, the king priest of Jerusalem: Heb chapter 7.
- The superiority of Christ over Aaron and his priesthood: Heb chapters 5-7.
- The superiority of Christ over any high priest: Heb chapter 8.
- The superiority of Christ over the Old Covenant: Heb Chap 9 & 10.
- The superiority of Christ’s sacrifice over the Old Testament sacrifices: Heb chapter 9 & 10.
- The superiority of Christ’s faithful people to all the faithless: Heb chapter 11.

The superiority of Christ's testimony over that of any other:
Heb chapters 12 & 13.

This brief outline gives us the flow of the book of Hebrews, which, above all else, teaches the total, complete and absolute superiority of Jesus Christ. When you can come to understand that Jesus Christ is truly superior to anything else, then you should come to realize that Jesus Christ and the teachings of grace are far superior to anything in the Old Testament. That is why the Apostle Paul said in Gal 2:16b, **.....by observing the law, NO ONE WILL BE JUSTIFIED.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author) Then in Gal 3:10 he says, **All who rely on observing the law are under a curse.** (NIV)

I spent two years teaching the book of Galatians to prove that there is nothing in the Mosaic Law for the Christian way of life. The Mosaic Law is very inferior to everything that is taught under grace in the epistles of the New Testament. After Jesus Christ fulfilled the law, (Matthew 5:17), the Mosaic Law was set aside and replaced by something far greater: Jesus Christ and the system of grace. Law and grace cannot exist together. John 1:17 tells us that **The law was given through Moses; GRACE AND TRUTH came through Jesus Christ.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Therefore, since Jesus Christ and grace are greater than anything and everything in the Old Mosaic Law, God canceled the law, God set aside the law, God made it null and void and replaced it with something far greater: Jesus Christ and the system of grace as taught in the New Testament epistles.

9. In the book of Hebrews, not only is Jesus Christ brought out as our Redeemer and Savior, but He is seen as our High Priest and King of Israel. There were high priests and kings in the Old Testament, but no one was both. One exception was Melchizedek, who was the high priest to the Most High God and king of Salem (Jerusalem, Gen 14:18). Melchizedek lived before the Mosaic Law was given, and his story is very unique. We will study that at a later time.
10. The book of Hebrews points out that Jesus Christ came as the Mediator of a better system. Under the Old Testament system, sacrifices were made constantly. Day after day, month after month, year after year. They never stopped. Besides this, the priests themselves were sinners. They had to make sacrifices for their own sins before they could make sacrifices for the sins of the people.

The whole system never removed sin fully or completely. It only covered it up or set it aside temporarily.

What man needed was a perfect priest and a perfect sacrifice. A sacrifice that was not just a picture or illustration. A sacrifice that did not deal with just one sin at a time. But a sacrifice that would take away once and for all, not only the sin, but also the guilt and the judgment that was connected to sin. That, says the writer of Hebrews, is exactly what Jesus Christ was (the perfect sacrifice) and what He did (removed sin and its judgment from the human race completely). Jesus Christ came as a Mediator of a better system because it is one that does not have to be repeated every hour, or even every month, or even every year. Jesus Christ came as a Mediator of a better system because His sacrifice, once and for all, removes every sin that has ever been committed. Not only that, but it removes the judgment of every sin that ever will be committed.

Jesus Christ came as the Mediator of a better system because He is a priest who does not need to make any sacrifice for Himself. He is totally and completely perfect. The Perfect Priest and the Perfect Sacrifice: Heb 10:10, **And by that will, we have been made holy through the sacrifice of the body of Jesus Christ ONCE FOR ALL.** (NIV) Heb 10:12, **But when this priest, had offered for all time ONE SACRIFICE for sins, he sat down at the right hand of God.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

This was something that no other priest could ever do. There were no seats, no chairs, nothing to sit on in the tabernacle or in the temple. The priests had to keep making sacrifices; their work was never finished. But after Jesus made His sacrifice, He **“sat down.”** It was finished. It was done. It was completed. Therefore, Jesus Christ is a better priest making a better sacrifice. Therefore, one of the key messages of the book of Hebrews: to the believing Jews the Spirit says, “Continue to have confidence in this Priest and His sacrifice.”

11. The idea of a new system (grace) was not easy for the Jews to accept. After they accepted the new system of grace, it was very difficult for them to make a clean break with the Old Mosaic Law. The Gentiles did not have that problem since they had never been a part of the Old Mosaic system. They had long before lost any real knowledge of the true God, and in consequence they were worshipping idols. Some of these idols were primitive and some of them were very sophisticated, but all of them were idols just the same. (Read Romans 1:21-25)

But the Jews had always had a divine religion. For centuries they had known a divinely appointed place of worship and a divinely revealed way of worshipping. God Himself had established their religion. Therefore, even after a Jew received the Lord Jesus Christ, he had a very difficult time. He had a traditional desire to retain some of the forms and ceremonies that had been a part of his life since earliest childhood. Part of the purpose of the book of Hebrews, therefore, was to confront the born again Jews with the fact that they could, and should, let go of all their Judaistic trappings. But since the temple was still standing and priests still ministering in it, this was very difficult to do. The Jews who returned to the Temple to worship placed themselves in a position of becoming reversionistic believers, turning their back on the truths of the New Covenant to the Church. Even the Apostle Paul was lured back into the ritual of Judaism, and God disciplined him for it. (Acts chapter 21). But letting go became easier after the temple was destroyed in 70 AD.

12. Jews who accepted Jesus Christ as their Savior received intense persecution from fellow Jews. The high priest Ananias was especially hard and cruel. He had Christian Jews automatically banished from the holy places. All their lives they had had access to these sacred places. Now they could have no part in the formerly God-ordained services. They were not considered clean, spiritually. They could not go to the synagogue, much less the temple, they could not offer any sacrifice and they could not communicate with the priests. They could have nothing to do with their own people. They were cut off from their own society. For clinging to Jesus as the Messiah, they were banished from almost every sacred thing they had ever known. As a result, many could not tolerate being ostracized. Though Christian Jews who were ostracized were the only true Jews (Romans 2:28-29), they were considered by fellow Jews to be worse than Gentiles.

Throughout the book of Hebrews these Jewish Christians were told to keep their confidence in Christ, the mediator of a BETTER SYSTEM as the new GREAT HIGH PRIEST. They were reminded that they were losing nothing for which they were not getting something infinitely better. They had been deprived of an earthly temple but they were going to get a heavenly one. They had been deprived of an earthly priesthood, but they now had a heavenly Priest. They had been deprived of the old system of sacrifices, but now they had one final, total and complete sacrifice to rely on.

13. In the book of Hebrews we are going to see a lot of contrasts. Everything presented is presented as being BETTER!

Jesus is better than angels: Heb 1:4.
God has provided better things: Heb 6:9.
We have better blessings: Heb 7:7.
We have a better hope: Heb 7:19.
We have a better covenant: Heb 7:22.
We have a better Mediator: Heb 8:6.
We have a better sacrifice: Heb 9:23.
We have better possessions: Heb 10:34.
We have a better country: Heb 11:16.
We have a better resurrection: Heb 11:35.
We have a better plan for us: Heb 11:40.
We have a better word: Heb 12:24.

Jesus Christ is presented as being the supreme best. We are presented as being in Him and as dwelling in a completely new dimension, the heavenly. This term is used over and over again.

The heavenly calling: Heb 3:1.
The heavenly gift: Heb 6:4.
The heavenly country: Heb 11:16.
The heavenly Jerusalem: Heb 12:22.
Our names are written in heaven: Heb 12:23.

Everything is new. Everything is better. We don't need the old worn-out system of the Mosaic Law.

Hebrews 1:1-4; (KJV)

- Vs 1: **God, who at sundry times and in divers manners spake in time past unto the fathers by the prophets,**
- Vs 2: **Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;**
- Vs 3: **Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high;**
- Vs 4: **Being made so much better than the angels, as he hath by inheritance obtained a more excellent name than they.**

Hebrews 1:1; (KJV)

God, who at sundry times and in divers manners spake in time past unto the fathers by the prophets.

The first word in the English Bible is “**God,**” but it is not the first word in the Greek Bible. But we will analyze it first since it is the first word in the English Bible. The Greek says, ὁ θεός – HO THEOS referring to God the Father. This is also used for God the Son and God the Holy Spirit throughout the Bible.

Basically, when the word THEOS is used it refers to God in His essence and His plan. There is no way that man can have any spiritual victories apart from the plan of God, the decree of God or the authorization of God. We are going to see how everything started out with Jesus Christ as God, and then Jesus Christ became a man, lower than angels. Yet as a man, and as a member of the human race, He is the key to all of our spiritual victories. Apart from Him none of us can have any spiritual victories, or even spiritual blessings of any kind.

It took a lot of planning to take Jesus Christ who was eternal God, co-equal with the Father and the Spirit and allow Him to become a member of the human race. Then it took a lot of planning to take the One who was made lower than the angels and exalt Him higher than the angels. It is very easily and very simply stated several times in this chapter. But there was nothing easy or simple about the plan behind it, but it was a perfect plan. To understand the plan you have to understand the planner.

One thing that many countries do today is to keep a file on all of the generals and admirals of other countries. This has been done extensively since the American Civil War when a great number of military officers found out that it was very profitable to know how their classmates at West Point thought and functioned.

For example: General George B. McClellan, one of the commanders of the Union Army was a very excellent organizer. He was the best organizer in his class at West Point. So all of the men who knew him at West Point knew that he was a genius in the field of organization, but they also knew that he was very cautious when it came to making a tactical decision on the battlefield. Robert E. Lee knew him very well, and therefore took advantage of McClellan's cautiousness many times when he faced him in battle. As a result of this, military men around the world who studied the American Civil War began to realize that you should know your enemy. The more you knew about your enemy, the better your opportunity of defeating him, because you knew about his characteristics or personality traits. Many times, in many wars since the Civil War, intelligence reports also included the name of the one commanding the opposing forces. In this way a plan of battle would be drawn up, which not only considered the numbers of the enemy, or its disposition and terrain, but also who was commanding.

II Cor 10:4, **For the weapons of our warfare are not physical.....**(Amplified Bible) From this we know that we, as Christians, are involved in a great spiritual war, involving great and mighty armies of the spiritual realm. Armies of demons and fallen angels, which also includes their great and mighty leader, Satan. Therefore, it is to our advantage to know how Satan operates. In II Cor 2:11, in speaking about Satan, Paul says, **..we are not unaware (ignorant) of his schemes** (and strategies). (NIV) Not only is it to our advantage to know our enemy, but it is also to our advantage to know and understand God. But the only way anyone can understand God is to understand the Bible, which is the absolute Word of God. In studying the Word of God we learn that God the Father actually came up with a fantastic and unique plan, confirming His prehistoric judgment on all the fallen angels, including Satan, and that confirmation comes from a lower creation, mankind. We must remember that Jesus Christ could have spoken the word and destroyed all the rebellious angels in eternity past before man was ever created. But we must also remember that God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit all share a fantastic thing called "a sense of humor."

While the Devil in all his genius and arrogance came up with what he thought was a perfect scheme of getting out of the lake of fire and getting all the fallen angels off the hook, God designed a plan whereby a lower creation would actually judge Satan and all the fallen angels.

In reality, God in His omnipotence could have snapped His fingers and immediately there would exist a lake of fire and all the fallen angels would have dropped in immediately. But that was no contest. The omnipotence of God versus the genius Satan is no contest. Satan hasn't a chance. So God in His magnificent sense of humor came up with something unique. He came up with this brilliant and beautiful idea. "Why not create something lower than angels, something inferior to angels, and through that lower and inferior creation judge all of the rebellious angels, totally defeating them, and have one Man, Jesus Christ, accomplish it?"

If you can imagine for a moment an illustration from the physical realm. How do you think man would feel if he were to be judged and defeated by a lower creation like rats or mice? Some of the dirtiest little rodents of the animal creation. If someone told you that God was going to punish the human race, and that He was going to use a lower creation to do it, what would you think? Especially when you found out that He was going to use the rat, and use them to defeat the human race. If you can understand how humiliating that would be to the human race, then you have a very small understanding of how humiliating God's plan is to Satan and all the fallen angels.

In our passage (verses 1-3), we are going to see that Jesus Christ as eternal God became the last Adam made lower than the angels. Jesus is the One who in His humanity completely broke the back of Satan, fallen angels and demons in the angelic conflict.

But first of all we need to start with three questions, "Who is God?" "What is God like?" And how did God come up with this marvelous plan?

There are two important concepts of God taught in the Scripture:

1. The Essence of God.
2. The Person of God.

1. **THE ESSENCE OF GOD** - In essence God is One. In essence God is sovereignty, perfect righteousness, perfect justice, perfect love, eternal life, omnipotence, omnipresence, omniscience, immutability and veracity. Veracity is one point of essence that will come into the picture when we come across the faith-rest principle. Faith-rest has as its object Jesus Christ as the God-Man. Where certain promises were made by Jesus Christ, veracity (truthfulness and integrity) becomes a very important issue.

So the promises came from the veracity (truthfulness, honesty, integrity) of Jesus Christ, and the Biblical doctrines come from the omnipotence of Jesus Christ, and He is responsible for providing

objects of faith in the Christian life. In essence God is One, that is, the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit all have the same essence.

2. **THE PERSON OF GOD** - There are three separate and distinct persons called the Godhead that have this identical essence and each One has a part in the plan.

A. The Father is the Author of the plan.

B. The Son is involved with executing the plan.

C. The Holy Spirit provides power for the plan.

So when you read your Bible and you come across the word “God” you have to determine if it is talking about God as One in essence or if it is talking about God as One of the three persons of the Godhead.

Most of the time it doesn’t change any doctrine in the Scripture if you cannot tell which member of the Godhead is being referred to, so don’t get upset or discouraged when you cannot tell.

Literally, “The God.”

There are many so-called well educated individuals in the world telling us that we are what our environment makes us. Our life, our decisions (whether good or bad), our situations, our sufferings, our pressures and our prosperity are all brought about by our environment. The places we live, the people we associate with, how many material things we possess or don’t possess, our poverty or our prosperity: all work together to make us what we are. Well, I am here to tell you that according to the Word of God all of that is untrue, it is false. All those things are forces that are at work throughout the entire world. It is true, and there is a power that is moving throughout human history, a most significant force.

But that force is not Darwin’s natural selection (or what is called evolution), that force is not Marx’s economic determination (or what many call communism today), that force is not Freud’s libido (or what some call human sexuality), that force is not the United Nations or the New Age movement (which involves internationalism), that force is not liberalism and all of its evils, and that force is not even religion (which is one of the most evil things that Satan has been allowed to bring to the human race). The force that is moving through human history is the power of God. A power that can make a man what he ought to be, a new creature in Christ.

Life is made or broken, life is rewarding or not so rewarding depending upon the degree of conformity on the part of any individual or society to the knowable, divine direction known as the will of God. With regard to this concept the Bible has a very important message, one that is rarely quoted

from the pulpit. The Apostle Paul tells us in II Cor 13:8, **For we cannot** (we do not have the power to) **do anything against the truth, but for** (on behalf of) **the truth.** (NIV) (Explanation provided by the author)

In other words, nothing of significance, nothing of consequence, nothing of importance, nothing that is lasting, nothing that matters can be accomplished which is **“against the truth.”** All efforts in that direction are ineffective, worthless and trivial. All energy expended in any activity which is against the will of God is lost, never to be seen again. **But the plans of the Lord stand firm forever, the purposes of his heart through all generations.** (Psalm 33:11, NIV) **Many are the plans in a man’s heart, but it is the Lord’s purpose that prevails.** (Proverbs 19:21, NIV)

By contrast, life and all that it offers: happiness, accomplishments and eternal destiny are implicit in those thoughts and activities that are “for the truth.” It is in that direction and for that cause that anything that is done is truly done in an intelligent sense. The key to all reality in life, to every good work that matters is the intelligent human will responding affirmatively to the will of God. That simple principle, if followed, will bring a multitude of blessings to the perceptive soul, and will deliver it from a multitude of problems.

Today in the classrooms of our schools and in most of the ads on television and newspapers we are told to believe that there is something “dynamic” and “ongoing” about the world that makes it an exciting place to be. How readily everyone seems to accept the lie that history itself possesses a force that will carry us on to progress, riches, enjoyment and perhaps utopia if we will just cooperate with that force. I am referring to the “New Age Movement.” This movement is expressed in a variety of ways drawing on ancient concepts, especially from Eastern and American Indian traditions and incorporating such themes as holism, concern for nature, spirituality (all except Christian), and metaphysics. Today we see it expressed in the environmental movement and the issues surrounding climate change. Many modern cults and pagan religions have built their appeal on these false and demonic teachings.

The modern “New Age Movement” insists that beings who choose to live “in harmony with nature” will discover happiness and be a part of the great utopian wave of the future. So thousands gather for great acts of worship in which they talk about “mother earth.” The earth is the mother of nothing! In fact, God created the earth: the earth creates nothing. God created the plants and the animals and commanded them to reproduce, and then He provided the conditions for them to do just that. But the earth is not a mother. It is a created thing like everything else.

Individuals involved in the New Age Movement get together and hold hands along some line they call a special “magnetic resonance,” and they participate in what they call a great “harmonic convergence.” By harmonic convergence they mean that each one is called upon to think in unison with all the other new Agers about a perfect world, individual fulfillment and the utopia soon to come. The New Age Movement carries its propaganda everywhere, calling upon people to cooperate with the destiny they say is built into the social structure.

All of this is nonsense and borders on insanity. Not only that, but it is blasphemy. People are recognizing everything except the only true God. They are trying every solution but God’s salvation. Human laws cannot correct the problems in this country or the world. Psychology will not and cannot correct the problems in this country or the world. Laws and psychology can’t even solve our personal problems. The will of God is the answer. If there is trouble in creation, then go to the creator for the solution. It is His will that must be considered, nothing else will do. Nothing else can bring peace of mind and soul. Nothing else can give us the proper motivation to move on.

God’s will for individuals can be summed up in two basic points:

1. **II Peter 3:9, The Lord is not slow in keeping his promise, as some understand slowness. He is patient with you, not wanting (willing) anyone to perish, but everyone to come to repentance** (a change of mind and attitude).” (NIV) This means that God’s will is that all members of the human race change their minds about Jesus Christ and believe in Him as their personal Savior. Change your mind about the New Age Movement and believe in Jesus Christ; change your mind about the Environmental Movement and believe in Jesus Christ; change your mind about religion and believe in Jesus Christ. All the answers to all your problems are found in one Person, Jesus Christ, and the learning and application of His Word.

Jesus said in Matt 6:33, **But seek first the kingdom of God and his righteousness.....** The phrase “**But seek first the kingdom of God**” refers to salvation. “**Seeking the kingdom of God**” (NIV) actually refers to believing or trusting in Jesus Christ as your own personal Savior. That is the will of God for all human beings. Becoming a member of His kingdom. That is only accomplished through faith, belief or trust in Jesus Christ. Acts 4:12 tells us, **Salvation is found in no one else, for there is no other name under heaven given to men by which we must be saved.** (NIV) Therefore, it is the will of God for all people to believe in the Lord Jesus Christ and be

saved. It should be noted here that today the kingdom of God is invisible, but when Jesus Christ returns it will be visible, and He will rule and reign on the earth at that time: reign as the King of Israel, and rule the entire earth as the absolute sovereign.

2. It is the will of God for all those who accept His salvation to learn His Word, the Bible. II Tim 2:15 says, **Study to show yourself approved unto God.....** (KJV) In other words, if you want to please God and do what He wills, then studying the Word of God is the only way to do it. II Peter 3:18 tells us to **.....grow in the grace and knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ.....** (NIV) In the Greek text this is written in the imperative mood, a mood of command. All believers in Jesus Christ are commanded to learn His Word. That is the most important thing that a Christian can do. Good works or deeds are not required. Because God knows that you cannot do the good works or the good deeds He desires you to do unless you know and understand His Word. Everything in the Christian life is based on your knowledge of the Word of God. If your life is not based on the Bible, then you are not living and cannot live the Christian life.

The knowledge and understanding of God's Word, the Bible, is so important He even allows many of His own people to die before their time because they have not taken the time to study it. Hosea 4:6,

My people are destroyed from lack of knowledge. (NIV)

This refers to a lack of knowledge of the Word of God, not lack of knowledge of academic learning. Then in Hosea 4:14 it says, **.....a people without understanding will come to ruin!** (NIV) Again this refers to the understanding of God's Word. Therefore, it is the will of God for all believers in Jesus Christ to place the learning and application of Bible doctrine as a number one priority in the Christian life.

As I continue with my exegesis of verse one, I want to emphasize the fact that In the English Bible "**God**" is the first word in this verse, but in the Greek Bible the word "**God**" comes after three adverbs.

Literally, "The God."

Who at sundry times and in divers manners spake in time past- The three adverbs are "**sundry times,**" "**divers manners,**" and "**in time past.**"

Who at - is not in the Greek text.

Sundry times - πολυμερῶς - POLUMEROS. Adverb meaning “consisting of many parts, in many parts or parcels, in many ways.” This refers to the Old Testament. “**In many parts**” of the Old Testament Jesus Christ is revealed. “**In many parts**” of the Old Testament we see the person who would eventually come in the flesh (incarnation) and be the basis of breaking the back of Satan in the angelic conflict.

Jesus Christ came as the last Adam. But in the Old Testament He did not come in the flesh. His appearances in the Old Testament are called theophanies. He appeared in many different ways in the Old Testament. He appeared as “the angel of Jehovah,” translated as “**the angel of the Lord.**” He appeared as a man who wrestled with Jacob. He came in many forms and there were many manifestations of Jesus Christ **in many parts** of the Old Testament Scripture. Shadows of Him are revealed from Genesis all the way through Malachi.

Summary of the Appearances of Jesus Christ in the Bible

1. There are four categories of appearances of Jesus Christ in the Bible.
 - A. THEOPHANIES: appearances of Jesus Christ before the first advent.
 - B. INCARNATION: Jesus Christ in hypostatic union living on the earth for thirty three years. This is the time Jesus lived on the earth possessing a normal human body.
 - C. CHRISTOPHANIES: the appearances of Jesus Christ in a resurrection body. The last Christophany was around 96 AD, when He appeared to the apostle John on the Island of Patmos and gave him the information for the book of Revelation.
 - D. SECOND ADVENT: the actual bodily return of Jesus Christ to the earth in a resurrection body to set up His kingdom.

We are only interested in the first category for the purpose of our study.

2. There are three categories of theophanies in the Old Testament.
 - A. Christ appeared as a man.
 - B. Christ appeared as a phenomenon of nature.
 - C. Christ appeared as the “angel of Jehovah.” (“angel of the Lord”)

3. Theophanies of Jesus Christ as a man.
 - A. He was entertained by Abraham: Genesis 18. This was the time when the Lord told Abraham that Sarah would have a baby within a year.
 - B. He wrestled with Jacob: Genesis 32:24-32. In this event Jacob would not let go of the Lord until He promised to bless him. In this wrestling match the Lord touched Jacob's hip and put it out of joint. Jacob limped the rest of his life to remind him of his personal encounter with the Lord and the promise that was given to him.
 - C. He appeared to the elders of Israel. Exodus 24:9-11.
4. Theophanies of Christ as phenomena of nature.
 - A. Christ appeared as a cloud: Exodus 40:38; I Corinthians 10:2.
 - B. Christ appeared as a pillar of the cloud: Exodus 33:9-23.
 - C. Christ appeared as a pillar of fire: Exodus 13:21, **By day the Lord went ahead of them in a pillar of cloud to guide them on their way and by night in a pillar of fire to give them light, so they could travel by day or night.** (NIV)
 - D. Christ appeared as a burning bush: Exodus 3:2; Acts 7:30, 35.
 - E. Christ appeared as the Shechinah glory in the Holy of Holies in the tabernacle and later in the temple: Exodus 25:22 compared with Leviticus 16:2, 13. The Shechinah glory refers "to the visible divine Presence, especially when resting between the cherubim over the mercy seat." (Unger's Bible Dictionary, page 1009).
5. Theophanies of Christ as the "angel of Jehovah."
 - A. The "angel of Jehovah" is called God in Gen 16:7-13. In verse 7 He is called **"the angel of the Lord"** (Jehovah), and then in verse 13 Hagar calls Him **"THE GOD who sees me."** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Gen 22:11-18: In verse 11 He is called **The angel of the Lord** (Jehovah). In verse 12 the angel (Jesus Christ), said, **.....Now I know that you fear God, because you have not withheld from ME** (the angel of Jehovah. Emphasis added by the author) **your son, your only son.** In other words, the angel of the Lord is God. Then in verse 15 the "angel of the Lord" said, **I swear** (I make an oath) **by myself,** or "through Myself." (NIV) Heb 6:13-14 tells us, **When God** (the angel of Jehovah of Gen 22:15) **made his promise to Abraham, since there was no one greater for him to swear by, he swore by**

himself, (14) saying, ‘I will surely bless you and give you many descendants. (NIV) (Emphasis provided by the author)

Gen 31:11-13. In verse 11 Jesus Christ is called **The angel of God.** Then in verse 13 He calls Himself **“God.”** Verse 13 begins, **I am the GOD of Bethel, where you anointed a pillar and where you made a vow to me.** (NIV) (Emphasis provided by the author)

Gen 48:15-16. Israel (Jacob) is speaking, **May THE GOD before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac walked, THE GOD who has been my shepherd all my life to this day, (16) THE ANGEL who has delivered me from all harm—may he bless these boys..**(NIV) (Emphasis provided by the author)

Exodus 3:1-3, **Now Moses was tending the flock of Jethro his father-in-law, the priest of Midian, and he led the flock to the far side of the desert and came to Horeb, the mountain of God. (2) There THE ANGEL OF THE LORD (Jehovah) appeared to him in flames of fire from within a bush. Moses saw that though the bush was on fire it did not burn up. (3) So Moses thought, “I will go over and see this strange sight—why the bush does not burn up.”** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Acts 7:30-35, **After forty years had passed, AN ANGEL appeared to Moses in the flames of a burning bush in the desert near Mount Sinai. (31) When he saw this, he was amazed at the sight. As he went over to look more closely, he heard THE LORD’S VOICE. (32) “I AM THE GOD OF YOUR FATHERS, THE GOD OF ABRAHAM, ISAAC AND JACOB.” Moses trembled with fear and did not dare to look.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

B. The angel of Jehovah is distinguished from Jehovah.

Gen 24:7, **The Lord (Jehovah) the God of heaven, who brought me out of my father's household and my native land and who spoke to me and promised me on an oath, saying, “To your offspring I will give this land—HE WILL SEND HIS ANGEL before you so that you can get a wife for my son from there.”** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Gen 24:40, **.....The Lord (Jehovah), before whom I have walked, will SEND HIS ANGEL with you and make your journey a success, so that you can get a wife for my son from my own clan and from my father’s family.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Exodus 23:20, **See, I AM SENDING AN ANGEL ahead of you to guard you along the way and to bring you to the place I have prepared.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Exodus 32:34, **Now go, lead the people to the place I spoke of, and MY ANGEL will go before you.....**
(NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Num 20:16, **but when we cried to the Lord (Jehovah), he heard our cry and sent AN ANGEL and brought us out of Egypt.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author).

I Chronicles 21:15-18, **And God sent an angel to destroy Jerusalem. But as the angel was doing so, the Lord (Jehovah) saw it and was grieved because of the calamity and said to the angel who was destroying the people, “Enough! Withdraw your hand.” THE ANGEL OF THE LORD (Jehovah) was then standing at the threshing floor of Araunah the Jebusite.** (NIV) The place where David built a special altar to the Lord reminding him of God’s forgiveness.

(16) **David looked up and saw the ANGEL OF THE LORD (Jehovah) standing between heaven and earth, with a drawn sword in his hand extended over Jerusalem. Then David and the elders, clothed in sackcloth, fell facedown.**

(17) **David said to GOD, “Was it not I who ordered the fighting men to be counted? I am the one who has sinned and done wrong. These are but sheep. What have they done? O Lord my God, let your hand fall upon me and my family, but do not let this plague remain on your people.”**
(NIV)

(18) **Then the ANGEL OF THE LORD ordered Gad to tell David to go up and build an altar to the Lord on the threshing floor of Araunah the Jebusite.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Zechariah 1:12-13, **Then the ANGEL OF THE LORD (Jehovah) said, “Lord Almighty, how long will you withhold mercy from Jerusalem and from the towns of Judah, which you have been angry with these seventy years?” (13) So the LORD (Jehovah) spoke kind and comforting words to the angel who talked with me.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

- C. The angel of Jehovah accomplished the following:
- (1) He warned Balaam (Numbers 22:22-35).
 - (2) He judged David's sin in numbering the people (II Samuel 24: 14-17; I Chronicles 21:11-13).
 - (3) He killed 185,000 Assyrian soldiers who were surrounding Jerusalem (II Kings 19:35; Isaiah 37:36).
 - (4) He provided for Elijah (I Kings 19:5-7).
 - (5) He protected Daniel (Daniel 6:22).
 - (6) He was the revealer of doctrine to Zechariah (Zech 1:9).
- D. After the incarnation, the angel of Jehovah no longer appeared.

Hebrews 1:1;

Literally, "God, in many parts."

Do you want to know what God is like? Then look to Jesus Christ. Do you want to know what God thinks? Then study the thinking of Jesus Christ which is Bible doctrine. Bible doctrine can only be obtained from studying the Bible. Jesus Christ is the only visible God, John 1:18, **No one has ever seen God, but God the One and Only, who is at the Father's side, has made him known.** (NIV) John 6:46, **"No one has seen the Father except the one who is from God; only he has seen the Father.** (NIV) I Tim 6:15-16, **.....God, the blessed and only Ruler, the King of kings and Lord of lords, (16) who alone is immortal and who lives in unapproachable light, whom no one has seen or can see.....** (NIV) I John 4:12, **No one has ever seen God; but if we love one another, God lives in us (we are occupied with Him) and his love is made complete in us.** (NIV) Therefore, Jesus Christ is God and as God possesses divine essence; He is the only revealed member of the Trinity. The angel of the Lord, Jehovah, in the Old Testament is the Lord Jesus Christ.

"Many parts" of the Scriptures talk about Jesus Christ. Jesus Christ is the subject of the Old Testament even as He is the subject of the New Testament. While the New Testament uses Greek, and therefore, Ἰησοῦς (IESOUS) Χριστός (CHRISTOS) and κύριος (KURIOS). In the Old testament He is found by the words יהוה (JEHOVAH or YEWAH), אֱל (EL), אֱלֹהִים (ELOHIM), and אֲדֹנָי (ADONI) and by many other words as designations in the Hebrew.

Therefore, the first adverb in our passage, πολυμερῶς (POLUMEROS) does not talk about God as a person. The first adverb talks about the Old Testament. God as a person is nebulous, obscure and unknown to us apart

from divine revelation, and the entire first chapter of Hebrews gives a very strong emphasis on the importance of the Old Testament. The Old Testament reveals Jesus Christ in many ways. The Old Testament reveals many wonderful things about Him. The principle of occupation with Jesus Christ existed in the Old Testament just as much as it does in the New Testament. The Old Testament believers did not have the doctrines we have today. The entire realm of Church Age doctrine was totally unknown to them. It was actually blocked out to them. However, they had enough doctrine, enough information so that the concept of occupation of Jesus Christ was very much available to them.

The human race had to exist and continue to exist until the incarnation so Jesus Christ could be born a true human being. The Jewish nation had to continue to exist so He could come out of the Jewish nation and into the human race as Jesus Christ, the God-Man. Born not only a Jew, but born King of the Jews. Born not only royalty of the Jews, but born as one lower than angels in the angelic conflict.

Not only did the human race and the Jewish nation have to continue to exist for Jesus Christ to come in the flesh, the Son of Jewish royalty, (Note: Mary and Joseph were both descended from the royal line of David: Mary was Jesus' real mother, but Joseph was only his legal father. The real father of Jesus was the Holy Spirit) but the human race and the Jewish race must continue to exist so He can return to a populated earth and a Jewish race to rule and reign, not only as the King of the Jews, but as the King over everything and everyone.

Therefore, the first adverb tells us that Jesus Christ was revealed **“in many parts”** of the Old Testament. Hebrews chapter one uses eight Old Testament quotations to teach us about Jesus Christ: Heb 1:5 quotes Psalm 2:7; Heb 1:5 quotes II Sam 7:14 and I Chron 17:13; Heb 1:6 quotes Deut 32:43; Heb 1:7 quotes Psalm 104:4; Heb 1:9 quotes Psalm 45:6-7; Heb 1:12 quotes Psalm 102:25-27 and Heb 1:13 quotes Psalm 110:1.

Acts 8:26-35 illustrates how the Old Testament may be used to teach about Jesus Christ. **Now an angel of the Lord said to Philip, “Go south to the road – the desert road – that goes down from Jerusalem to Gaza.” (27) So he started out, and on his way he met an Ethiopian eunuch, an important official in charge of all the treasury of Candace, queen of the Ethiopians. This man had gone to Jerusalem to worship, (28) and on his way home was sitting in his chariot reading the book of Isaiah the prophet. (29) The Spirit told Philip, “Go to that chariot and stay near it.”**

(30) **Then Philip ran up to the chariot and heard the man reading Isaiah the prophet. “Do you understand what you are reading?” Philip asked.**

(31) **“How can I,” he said, “unless someone explains it to me?” So he invited Philip to come and sit with him.**

(32) **The eunuch was reading this passage of Scripture: “He was led like a sheep to the slaughter, and as a lamb before the shearer is silent, so he did not open his mouth. (33) In his humiliation he was deprived of justice. Who can speak of his descendants? For his life was taken from the earth.” (34) The eunuch asked Philip, “Tell me, please, who is the prophet talking about, himself or someone else?” (35) Then Philip began with that very passage of Scripture and told him the good news about Jesus. (NIV) Verse 35 of Acts 8 clearly teaches that the Old Testament can be used to teach the message of Jesus Christ.**

Literally, “In many parts.....God.”

Remember that I told you that Hebrews 1:1 does not begin with God, it begins with three adverbs. We studied the first adverb, and now we will see the second one.

In divers manners - πολυτρόπως – POLUTROPOS. Adverb meaning, “Manifold, various, in many ways, in various modes.” Jesus Christ was revealed in different ways. Like: theophanies, anthropomorphisms, types from the tabernacle and temple, and in its furniture, the offerings, the holy days, etc., etc. All of the ways in which Christ was revealed are brought out by the second adverb. Let us look at some of these:

1. Theophanies: This refers to the appearances of Jesus Christ in the Old Testament before His Incarnation. As a theophany, Jesus Christ appeared as a man, an angel, a cloud, a pillar of fire, a pillar of a cloud and as a burning bush.
2. Anthropomorphisms: This ascribes to God in the language of accommodation portions of the human anatomy, which God does not have, so that man can understand divine function. Jesus Christ, the Son, is described as a part of God’s anatomy to explain to man divine function. For example, Exodus 15:6, **“Your RIGHT HAND”** (Jesus Christ), **“O Lord, was majestic in power. Your RIGHT HAND** (Jesus Christ), **“O Lord, shattered the enemy.”** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Psalm 17:7, **Show the wonder of your great love, you who save by your RIGHT HAND** (Jesus Christ)..... (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

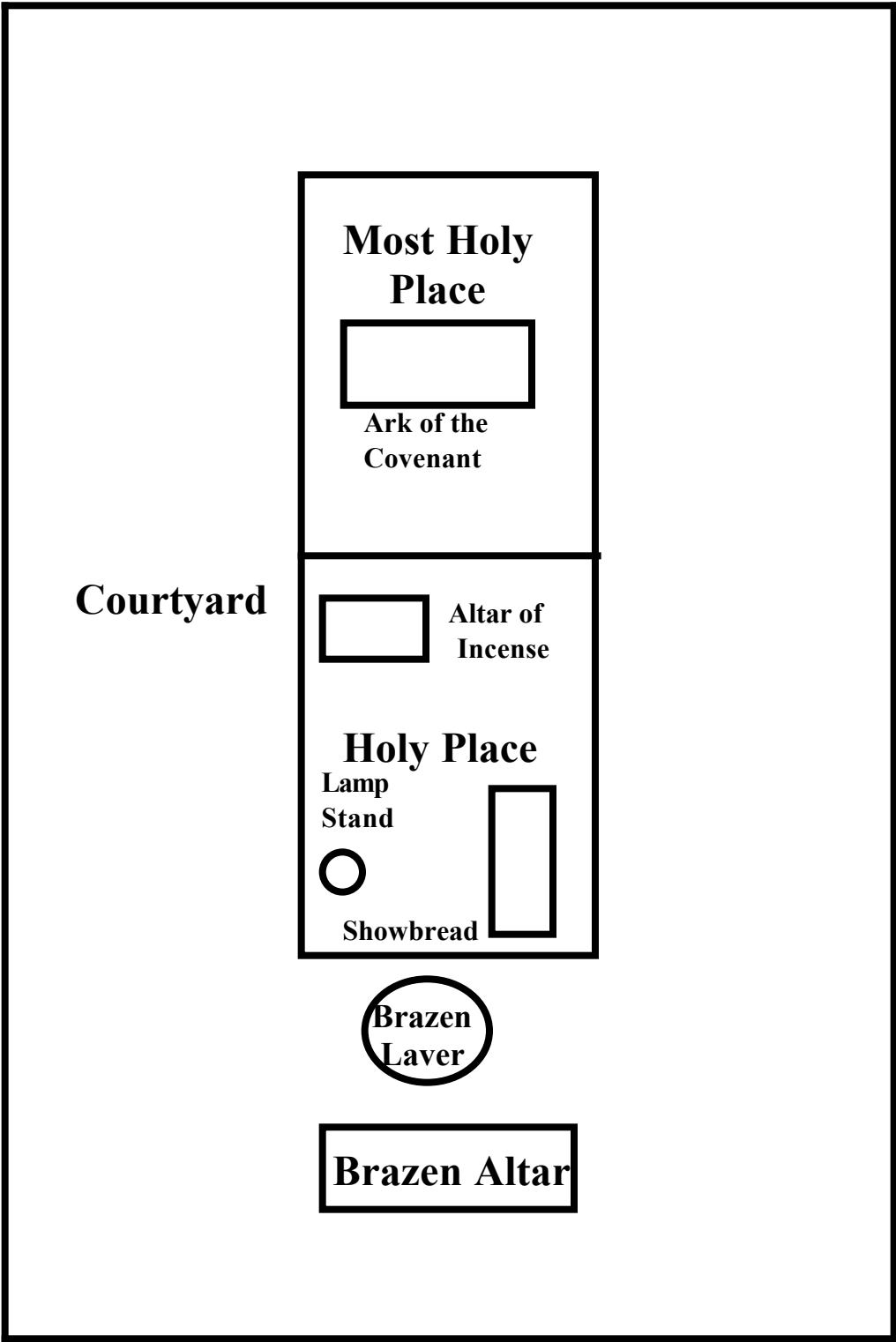
Psalm 18:35, **You give me your shield of victory, and your RIGHT HAND** (Jesus Christ) **sustains me**..... (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Isaiah 48:13, **.....my RIGHT HAND** (Jesus Christ) **spread out the heavens**..... (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

A total of 23 times the term “**right hand**” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Lord Jesus Christ.

Jesus Christ, who has been given honor and glory and who has been seated at the right hand of the Father in the New Testament is actually called the right hand of the Father in the Old Testament. Because He is Spirit, we know that the Father has no hands.

3. Types from the tabernacle and temple. Every item of furniture in the tabernacle and later the temple revealed Jesus Christ in some way.
 - A. The Brazen Altar was outside the holy place. This was where the animal sacrifices were carried out. The brazen altar represented Jesus Christ and His sacrifice on the cross.
 - B. The Brazen Laver was outside the holy place. This was where the Levitical priest washed his hands and cleansed himself from the blood of the animal. The laver is a picture of rebound, or the acknowledgment of sins on the part of the believer. Rebound is a term used to refer to the believer bouncing back into fellowship with the Holy Spirit, through acknowledgment to God regarding personal sins.
 - C. The Golden Lampstand was just inside the holy place on the left. It provided light for the holy place because all natural light was shut out. The golden lampstand represented Jesus Christ as the light of the world.
 - D. The Table of Showbread was just inside the holy place on the right. The table of showbread represented Jesus Christ as the sustainer of life for believers. Jesus Christ is called the bread of life in John 6:35 and 6:48.



Tabernacle Floor Plan

- E. The Altar of Incense was located next to the veil that marked the entrance into the Most Holy Place. As the smoke of the incense would rise up to God, so it represented Jesus Christ as our intercessor through whom our prayers and petitions ascend to God. Therefore, we are to pray to God the Father in the name of God the Son, Jesus Christ.
- F. The veil marked the entrance into the Most Holy Place and represented the body of Jesus Christ. The veil was supernaturally torn in two when Christ died on the cross granting instant access to God to everyone who approaches in faith. Matt 27:50-51 (NIV)
- G. The Ark of the Covenant was located in the Holy of Holies, or the Most Holy Place. In its materials of construction it represented Jesus Christ in hypostatic union. The wood of the ark represented the humanity of Jesus Christ and the gold overlay of the ark represented the deity of Jesus Christ. Therefore, the God-Man is represented by the ark of the covenant.
- H. The Mercy Seat, which was the cover of the ark, represented the divine throne of God. It was transformed from a throne of judgment to a throne of grace by the blood sacrifice that was sprinkled on it. This was the place of propitiation. The place where God was satisfied and the individual believer was reconciled to God. This represents the results of the finished work of Jesus Christ on the cross.

This is a very brief description of what the articles of furniture in the tabernacle and temple represented. I will have more to say about each item as we move further into the book of Hebrews.

Literally, “In many parts and in different ways.”

The first adverb says “**in many parts**” of the Old Testament (from Genesis to Malachi) Jesus Christ was revealed. Then the second adverb says, “**In many different ways**” Jesus Christ was revealed in the Old Testament. These “many ways” are going to be contrasted with the New Testament where Jesus Christ is revealed in only one way.

The only way we can truly know and understand God is for God to make Himself known to us, and to cause us to understand Him. Maybe you can understand this principle a little better with this illustration. Mankind lives in a box known as the physical world, which encloses him within its walls of time and space. Outside of this box is the supernatural world, the spiritual world,

and somewhere deep inside of himself man knows it is out there. But in himself he does not know anything certain about it. Then someone comes along and says, "We must find out about the supernatural, the spiritual world out there," and a new religion is born.

Many people try many different ways in attempting to understand the supernatural world. The Buddhist says that when you have worked and thought and meditated yourself into Nirvana, all of a sudden you are out of the box. You are actually out of the physical world. You have transcended the natural and have found your way into the supernatural. The Muslim says that you must conquer by the sword in order to be released from the box. All the other religions, Zoroastrianism, Hinduism, Confucianism, or whatever it may be have their own ideas of how to be released from the box of the physical world. These are all attempts by man to escape the natural world and move into the supernatural world and into a heavenly state. But the problem is this: in reality man cannot understand the spiritual world no matter what he does. He cannot escape the physical world. Most people are deceived into believing that they can do something to free themselves from this natural world.

I want you to picture an individual approaching a locked door with the idea of breaking through it and escaping the house he is in. He uses his intelligence and attempts to pick the lock. When that fails he gets hyped up with emotion and attempts to break through the door. When that fails he uses tactics and schemes of all kinds, from attempting to escape through windows, going up the chimney, or even through the ventilation system. All of the time that this individual is trying to get out of this house the key to the door is sitting very obviously on the table next to the door. The key represents Jesus Christ. He is the key to heaven. He unlocks the door to heaven to anyone who will believe or trust in Him. The key also represents Jesus Christ as the written Word of God. Only through the knowledge of the Word of God can we know anything about the supernatural and spiritual world. Everything else in this illustration represents religions of all sorts and categories. Anyone who attempts to gain favor with God, or to learn about God in any way except the way He approves is the same as a thief and a robber. Why do I say that? In John 10:1 Jesus says, **"I tell you the truth, the man who does not enter the sheep pen by the gate, but climbs in by some other way, is a thief and robber."** (NIV)

In John 10:9-10 He says, **I am the gate; whoever enters through me will be saved. He will come in and go out, and find pasture. (10) The thief comes only to steal and kill and destroy** (that is what religion does); **I have come that they may have life, and have it to the full.** (NIV)

Therefore, natural man cannot escape into the supernatural. He cannot go into a religious phone booth and change into a superman. He cannot in himself or by himself transcend his natural existence. If man is to know anything about God it will not be by escaping, or climbing, or thinking, or working his way to Him; it can only be by God coming to man, and speaking to man. Man cannot by himself understand God any more than an insect can understand man. Nor can man condescend to the insect's level and communicate with it. But God can and did condescend to man's level and He communicated with us. The last of God's communication to man was through His Son Jesus Christ.

God became a man Himself and entered our box. He entered our natural world to tell us about Himself more fully and more completely than He was able to do even through His prophets. This was not only divine revelation, but it was a personal divine revelation of the most literal and perfect and wonderful sort. All of man's religions reflect his attempts to make his way out of the box, to escape the natural world. But the message of true Christianity is that God actually came into the box to get man. Luke 19:10 tells us, **.....the Son of Man came to seek and to save what was lost.** (NIV)

When God came into the box of man's natural world He did it in human form, and the name of that human form is Jesus Christ. That is the difference between Christianity and every other religion in the world. That is why it is so foolish for people to say, "It doesn't make any difference what you believe or what religion you follow." IT MAKES EVERY DIFFERENCE! Every religion is only man's attempt to discover God, but man can never discover God on his own. Christianity is God bursting into man's world and showing and telling man what He is like. Man by himself is incapable of identifying, comprehending, or even understanding God at all. Because of man's total helplessness in this matter, God had to actually invade the world of man and speak to him about Himself. But, He told us He would be coming. That is the Old Testament.

God spoke first in the Old Testament, which is not merely a collection of the wisdom of men from ancient time, but it is the voice of God. God spoke **"In many parts and in many ways."** There are many books in the Old Testament, thirty-nine of them. In all of these **"many parts"** (πολυμερῶς – POLUMEROS) and in **"many ways"** (πολυτρόπως – POLUTROPOS) God spoke to men about Jesus Christ. Sometimes it was in a vision, sometimes by a parable, sometimes through a type or symbol. There were many different ways in which God spoke to men in the Old Testament about Jesus Christ. But it was always God speaking, God revealing.

Men were used, their minds were used, and their personalities were used, but they were totally controlled by the Spirit of God. Every word they wrote was the word that God decided they should write, and He delighted in their writing.

“Many ways” includes many types of literary styles. Some of the Old Testament is narrative. Some of it is poetry in beautiful Hebrew meter. **“The many ways”** also includes types of content. Some is law, some is prophecy, some is doctrine, some are ethics and morality, some is a warning, some is encouragement, and so on. But it is all God speaking.

Yet, as beautiful and important and authoritative as it is, the Old Testament is fragmentary and incomplete. It was delivered over the course of about 1500 years by over 32 different writers using many different styles. It began to build and grow, truth upon truth. It was what we call “progressive revelation.” Genesis gives a lot of truth, and Exodus gives some more truth. The truth builds and builds. And this continued until the formation of the New Testament canon with its eight different writers who completed the body of truth we call The Word of God.

In the Old Testament God was pleased for that time to dispense His gracious truth to the Jews by the mouths of His prophets in **“many different ways,”** developing His revelation progressively from lesser to greater degree of light. The revelation did not build from error to truth but from incomplete truth to a more complete truth. It remained incomplete until the New Testament was finished. I Cor 13:10, **But when that which is complete comes** (the completed Bible) **then that which is incomplete will be brought to an end.** (Expanded translation from the studies of R.H. Kreger)

We must clearly understand that the Old Testament was not in any way erroneous, it was one hundred percent truth. But there was in it a development of spiritual light and of moral standards, which guided believers until God’s truth was refined and finalized in the New Testament. The distinction is not in the validity of the revelation — its rightness or wrongness — its truth or error — but in the completeness of it and the time in which it was presented.

Just as children are first taught letters, then words, and then sentences, God gave His revelation in the same manner. It began with a “picture book” of types, ceremonies, prophecies and progressed to final completion in Jesus Christ and His New Testament. The Lord tells us through the Apostle Paul that the Old Testament was considered to be the basic step in spiritual revelation. Paul in Rom 7:6 calls it **“a letter,”** like a letter from the alphabet. **But now, by dying to what once bound us** (referring to the

Old Testament law), **we have been released from the law so that we serve in the new way of the Spirit, and not the old way of the written code.** (Referring to the Old Testament law). (NIV) II Cor 3:6, **He has made us competent as ministers of a new covenant – not of the letter** (not by means of the ABC's of the Old Testament law) **but of the Spirit; for the letter kills** (the Old Testament law cursed and killed), **but the Spirit gives life.** (NIV) (Explanations added by the author)

Therefore, the Old Testament was a children's picture book, it was the ABC's of God's revelation. It was only the beginning of what God was going to reveal to mankind through His Son Jesus Christ who is the final revelation from God.

Literally, "In many parts and in different ways."

In time past - *πάλαι* – PALAI. This is the third adverb in our passage. It means "of old, long ago, former." This tells us that the writer is talking about the Old Testament.

Literally, "In many parts and in different ways, God."

Spake - *λαλήταις* – LALETAIS. Aorist active participle nominative masculine singular of the verb *λαλέω* – LALEO. Means "to speak, to communicate." The action of the aorist participle precedes the action of the main verb, which is down in verse 2, "**hath spoken.**" "**In these last days HATH SPOKEN unto us.**" (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Literally, "In many parts (of the Old Testament) and in different ways in the past God spoke."

AORIST TENSE (ingressive): This views the action of the verb in its entirety but emphasizes the beginning of that action. Literally, "He began to speak." When did God begin to speak about Jesus Christ? "**In many parts**" of the Old Testament. This ingressive aorist tells us that God only began to speak about Jesus Christ in the Old Testament.

ACTIVE VOICE: The subject produces the action of the verb. God produced the action of speaking.

PARTICIPLE (temporal) emphasizing the time of the action of the verb. The time was "**in many parts**" of the Old Testament, "in the past."

Principle: Ever since man has lived on the earth God has spoken to him about Jesus Christ. There were two basic things that man learned in the Garden of Eden: Who his mate was and who Jesus Christ was. Jesus Christ was his

teacher, and the woman was his companion. It wasn't complicated at all. They were in perfect environment. Therefore the principle found in the Garden of Eden remains the same right down to where we are today; God is not complicated. Anytime anyone talks about how complicated things are, we need to remember that God is not complicated, but Satan tries to complicate everything. The more he complicates things the more confused man becomes. But we need to remind ourselves from time to time that God is never complicated, nor is God the author of confusion or disorder (I Cor 14:33).

Therefore, there has never been a time in any age, in any generation or in any group of people where Jesus Christ has not been revealed, and there never will be. Jesus Christ is the most important subject to the human race. There is no subject that has more importance. Jesus Christ demands first place in the human race. Why? One of the reasons is given in the book of Hebrews. **“Jesus Christ, made lower than the angels”** (Heb 2:7) and He defeated the angels. Jesus Christ broke the back of Satan and defeated Him through His work on the cross, His resurrection and session. Since that time Jesus Christ at the right hand of the Father in resurrection body is the picture of absolute victory. From that time right down to the day in which we live the enemy is defeated. We are actually living in the closing stages of the angelic war, which will end at the Second Advent of Jesus Christ and the imprisonment of Satan.

Our enemy has been defeated! In every generation there are many Christians who do not know this. The Christians who do not know this have a tendency to become decadent and apostate and try to solve the problems of life through some form of activism or some form of legalism. They have rejected the plan of God for the Christian way of life. Psalm 138:2 tells us that God **....has exalted above all things his name and his word.** (NIV)

If you are in any form of activism, then you have rejected the plan of God. If you are in any form of legalism, then you have rejected the plan of God.

It is possible to be winning a war and at the same time be defeated in certain isolated battles. It is even possible to be winning a battle and yet be defeated in certain other parts of the same battlefield. This has happened many times in history. It is possible to be on the winning side and still be losing in your corner of the battlefield. That is one reason why discouragement and negative attitudes toward Bible doctrine are so bad.

The spiritual war has technically been won, but many Christians are losing individual battles in this stage of the great spiritual war.

Literally, “In many parts (of the Old Testament) and different ways in the past, God spoke.”

Five Principles of God Speaking

1. The fact that God has spoken is a glorious reality. The fact that God has actually communicated to His creatures in truth should cause everyone to stand up and take notice. But man in his arrogance and pride not only rejects what God has said, but he even rejects the fact that God has spoken.
2. Everyone should know and realize that God was not obligated in any way to speak to fallen, depraved man. He was under no moral commitment to communicate. He had no debt to pay. The Psalmist said, **When I consider your heavens, the work of your fingers, the moon and the stars, which you have set in place, (4) What is man that you are mindful of him, or the son of man that you care for him?** (Psalm 8:3-4). (NIV)
3. God is infinitely higher than man. The fact that He spoke is simply an indication of His great grace and condescension. If He had not spoken man would not know where he came from and would not know where he was going; neither would he know how to live between these two points. If God had not spoken, it would be like a man in a dark room looking for a black cat that wasn't there. If God had not spoken, forget about the light at the end of the tunnel, there wouldn't even be a tunnel. If God had not spoken, man would be adrift in a storm of life without a map or compass. But thank God that He has spoken, and He has given us the map of His Word and the compass of the Holy Spirit.
4. Yes, God has spoken. He has spoken through the Old Testament by means of the prophets, and God has spoken in the New Testament by means of His Son, Jesus Christ. Because He has spoken there are answers to our questions, there are solutions to our problems, and there is hope for our end. All of the answers of God are wrapped up in His completed and perfect Word that we call the Bible. All we need to do is to study it and learn it and let God do the rest. The majority of Christians today are not doing that. In fact, most Christians reject the idea that all they have to do in the Christian life is to learn the Word of God and then apply it. Most Christians think that they have to be doing something in order to be living the Christian life. But that is not what the Bible teaches.

The Bible teaches us in II Timothy 2:15, **Do your best** (through study) **to present yourself to God as one approved, a workman who does not need to be ashamed and who correctly handles (divides) the word of truth.** (NIV) I want you to notice that this verse tells us that **“to be approved to God”** we don’t have to do anything but study the Word of God. The words **“do your best,”** in the NIV translated **“study”** in the King James Version is a translation of the aorist active imperative of the verb **σπεύδω** – SPEUDO meaning “to be eager, to be diligent, to strive.” In tracing the background etymology of this word I found that it refers to “mental effort exerted in an attempt to add to one’s knowledge,” hence, the translation **“study”** in the King James Version. Therefore, it conveys the meaning of “diligence and eagerness” in not only learning, but in applying that which is learned. The word SPEUDO is an aorist active imperative. The aorist tense speaks of the various times one devotes to the study of the Word of God. The Bible cannot be studied all at one time, but it must be studied at various intervals. The active voice emphasizes the believer producing the action of initiating this study. The imperative mood tells us that this is a command from the Lord.

In other words, we as believers in the Lord Jesus Christ, members of the family of God are commanded to be eager and diligent in our study of the Word of God. Therefore we understand through II Tim 2:15 that it is only through our **“study”** of the Word of God that we will be able to learn how to **“correctly handle the Word of truth.”** The word **“handle”** in the NIV is the present active participle of the verb **ὀρθοτομέω** – ORTHOTOMEIO meaning “to cut straight, to divide correctly, to set forth truthfully without perversion or distortion.” From this we learn that if there is a right way to divide the Word of truth, then there must be a wrong way. The verb ORTHOTOMEIO is a present tense. The present tense in the Greek speaks of continuous action in present time. Our study of the Word occurs at various intervals, but our application of the Word is supposed to be continuous.

“Rightly dividing the word of truth” is to be a manner of life for the believer.

Therefore, if you will study consistently, day after day, week after week, month after month, and year after year (as frequently as the Old Testament Levitical priests offered sacrifices, which was daily), everything else in your life becomes God’s responsibility. Your witnessing, your giving, your job, your social life or anything else He might deem necessary. But God is not obligated to guide your every

step in life if you don't have enough love for Him to saturate your soul with His Word, which is the very breath of God. II Timothy 3:16 tells us that **.....all scripture is God-breathed...** (NIV) All Scripture is the breath of God. If you want the breath of God to fill your soul, then study His Word, because that is the only way to get it. Heb 4:12 says, **For the word of God is living and active (powerful). Sharper than any double-edged sword, it penetrates even to dividing soul and spirit, joints and marrow; it judges the thoughts and attitudes of the heart.** (NIV) Since the Word of God is the most powerful weapon that God has given to us, wouldn't it be logical for us as Christians to dedicate our lives to the learning of it? Doing good deeds is nice, but it won't change the way God looks at you and me who are depraved and ignorant. A creature who is arrogant and self-centered thinks that he can win some points with God by doing good.

If any Christian thinks that he can satisfy God by doing good deeds, then he deceives himself and has rejected the plan of God as presented in the Bible. The Christian life is to be a dedication of learning and application of the Word of God in the filling of the Holy Spirit; there is no higher calling for the believer in Jesus Christ. Jesus said in Matthew 4:4, **.....Man does not live on bread (physical food) alone, but on every word that comes from the mouth of God.** (NIV)

Today the Word that comes from the mouth of God is found in the Bible. This is to be our life. The learning and application of Bible doctrine. There is no other course for the believer in the Lord Jesus Christ if he desires to stay in the plan of God in this life.

5. Therefore, any other revelation than that which comes from the Bible and exists in the world comes from the genius of Satan and is false and deceptive. God did not speak through Buddha, God did not speak through Mohammed, God did not speak through Confucius, God did not speak through Joseph Smith. How do we know? Because what those men and what many like them teach is opposite to what the Bible teaches. If anyone's teaching does not line up with what the Bible teaches, then his teaching is wrong and is not the revelation of God. All of this is very simple and uncomplicated.

Before you can come to that conclusion you must know what the Bible teaches, and before you can know what the Bible teaches you must study the Bible consistently. Even though you devote your entire life to the study of the Scriptures you will never know all that there is to know, because life is too short and there is so much to learn. So you will finish your learning project of the Word of God after you get to heaven.

Literally, “In many parts (of the Old Testament) and in different ways in the past, God spoke.”

Unto the fathers by the prophets - τοῖς πατράσιν ἐν τοῖς προφήταις – TOIS PATRASIN EN TOIS PROPHETAIS.

Unto the fathers - τοῖς πατράσιν – TOIS PATRASIN. First of all we have the definite article TOIS, plus the dative masculine plural of the noun πατήρ – PATER. Means “father, the founder of a race, ancestor.” This refers to the national leaders of the Jews. This is a dative of indirect object. The definite article emphasizes the identity of the noun, and the dative of indirect object is also used for great emphasis.

Literally, “In many parts (of the Old Testament) and in different ways in the past, God spoke to our fathers.”

By the prophets - ἐν τοῖς προφήταις – EN TOIS PROPHETAIS. First of all we have the preposition ἐν – EN, plus the dative instrumental plural of the noun προφήτης – PROPHETES, which means “prophet.” Prophet was a spiritual gift in Old Testament times. A prophet was one who spoke to the people about God. He represented God to the people. The Levitical priest on the other hand, represented the people to God, but he did not represent God to the people. The writers of the Old Testament were prophets.

Literally, “By means of the prophets.”

Contrasts Between the Prophet and the Priest

1. While the prophet represented God to man and spoke to man on behalf of God, the priest represented man to God and spoke to God on behalf of man. The priest takes man’s problems to God; the prophet takes God’s message to man.
2. The prophet would face the people with his back to God and communicate to the people the Word of God. The priest, on the other hand, would face God with his back to the people and speak to God on their behalf.
3. The prophet would usually be out in the countryside or wherever the people were to communicate God’s message to them. The priest on the other hand, would always be in the tabernacle or the temple, and the people had to come to him for him to communicate to God on their behalf. Both the prophet and the priest (if they were true) were commissioned by God, but their ministries were very different.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 1: “In many parts (of the Old Testament) and in many different ways in the past, God spoke to our forefathers by means of the prophets.”

Principle: the Old Testament is only part of God’s truth, but it is not partially His truth; it is not His complete truth, but it is completely His truth. It is God’s revelation, His progressive revelation preparing His people for the coming of His Son, Jesus Christ.

Hebrews 1:2; (KJV)

Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds. (KJV)

Hath in these last days - This phrase is strictly Messianic. This phrase was very familiar to the Jews of that day and had a distinctive meaning. Whenever a Jew saw or heard these words he immediately had Messianic thoughts because the Scriptural promise was that in the last days Messiah would come. Since the book of Hebrews was written first of all to the Jews, we will interpret this phrase in that context.

In John 4:25 the woman at the well, even though she was a Samaritan and even though she was living in sin told Jesus, **.....I know that Messiah (called Christ) is coming. When he comes, he will explain everything to us.** (NIV) In other words, she knew that when the Messiah came, He would declare the full and final revelation of God to man, as indeed He did.

The writer of Hebrews is saying something like this: "In these promised last days Messiah (Christ) has come and has spoken the final revelation of God." Jesus came and spoke in these last days. But the Messiah's own people rejected Him and His revelation, and so the fulfillment of all the promises of the last days have yet to be fulfilled. The Old Testament had been given in pieces. To Noah was revealed the quarter of the world from which the Messiah would come. To Micah, the town where He would be born. To Daniel, the time of His birth. To Malachi, the forerunner who would come before Him. To Jonah, His resurrection was typified. Every one of those pieces of revelation was true and accurate; each one related to others in some way or another. Each one in some way pointed to the Messiah, the Christ. But in Jesus Christ Himself everything was brought together and made whole. In Him the revelation was full and complete.

Principle: since the revelation is complete, to add anything to the New Testament would be blasphemous. To add to it the book of Mormon, or Science and Health, or anything else that claims to be revelation from God is blasphemous. Our passage literally says, "God in these last days finalized His revelation in His Son." It is finished.

Therefore, the priority of Jesus Christ is established. He is far greater than the prophets. He is greater than any revelation in the Old Testament because He is the embodiment of all that truth and more. God has fully expressed Himself in Jesus Christ. Jesus Christ has fully expressed Himself

through the written Word of Scripture in the Greek of I Cor 13:10,**but when perfection comes, the imperfect disappears.** (NIV) The word “**perfection**” comes from the Greek word meaning “to complete.” This refers to the completion of the canon of Scripture. The canon of Scripture is actually Jesus Christ in written form. Jesus is called HO LOGOS in John 1:1-3, translated “**the word.**” The Bible is called HO LOGOS in Eph 1:13.

An unknown author has written: “That Jesus Christ came from the bosom of the Father to the bosom of a woman. He put on humanity that we might put on divinity. He became the Son of Man that we might become the sons of God. He was born contrary to the laws of nature, lived in poverty, was reared in obscurity, and only once crossed the boundary of the land in which He was born, and that was in His childhood. He had no wealth or influence and had neither training nor education in the world’s schools. His relatives were inconspicuous and not influential. At infancy He startled a king. In boyhood He puzzled the learned doctors of the law. In manhood He ruled the course of nature. He walked upon the billows and hushed the sea to sleep. He healed multitudes without medicine and made no charge for His services. He never wrote a book and yet all the libraries of the world could not hold the books about Him. He never wrote a song, yet He has furnished the theme for more songs than all songwriters together. He never founded a college, yet all the schools together cannot boast of as many students as He has. He never practiced medicine and yet He healed more broken hearts than all the doctors have healed broken bodies. This Jesus Christ is the star of astronomy, the rock of geology, the lion and the lamb of zoology, the harmonizer of all discords, and the healer of all diseases. Throughout history great men have come and gone, yet He lives on. Herod could not kill him. Satan could not seduce Him. Death could not destroy Him and the grave could not hold Him.”

Amos 3:7 tells us, **Surely the Sovereign Lord does nothing without revealing his plan to his servants the prophets.** (NIV) This tells us that the Old Testament prophets were given the secrets of God, and yet at times they wrote those secrets without a true understanding of them.

I Peter 1:10-12, **Concerning this salvation, the prophets, who spoke of the grace that was to come to you, searched intently and with the greatest care, (11) trying to find out the time and circumstances to which the Spirit of Christ in them was pointing when he predicted the sufferings of Christ and the glories that would follow. (12) It was revealed to them that they were not serving themselves but you, when they spoke of the things that have now been told to you by those who have preached the gospel to you by the Holy Spirit sent from heaven. Even angels long to look into these things.** (NIV)

In Jesus Christ all the secrets of God are not only revealed, but they are clear. He is God's final word." II Cor 1:20, **For no matter how many promises God has made, they are 'Yes' in Christ. And so through him the 'Amen' is spoken by us to the glory of God.** (NIV) In other words, every promise of God reveals itself in Christ. All the promises become "**Yes,**" verified and fulfilled. Jesus Christ is the supreme and the final revelation of God.

Literally, "In these last days." This refers to the days of fulfillment. In the Old Testament the Jews saw the last days as the time when all the promises of God would be fulfilled. In other words, "in the last days," promises would stop and fulfillment begin. That is exactly what Jesus came to do. He came to fulfill the promises. Even though the Millennial, earthly aspect of the promised kingdom, is yet future, the age of kingdom fulfillment began when Jesus arrived, and it will not be totally completed until we enter into the eternal heavens. So the Old Testament age of promise ended when Jesus Christ arrived in His incarnation.

Summary Principles of the Phrase, "In These Last Days"

1. The Messianic phrase "**in these last days**" actually refers to the rest of human history. So we have the Old Testament in the past, then we have the New Testament for the rest of history.
2. The New Testament is the revelation of the incarnate Christ. In the Old Testament He was always revealed as God and He took upon Himself the form of a man, the form of an angel or the forms of a phenomena of nature. In other words, there were many ways that Jesus Christ revealed Himself. But, "**in these last days,**" in the days of the New Testament after His incarnation, Jesus Christ is only revealed by the Holy Spirit in one way, as a man, and in one language, Koine Greek.
3. "**In these last days,**" in the New Testament, Jesus Christ is revealed as the God-Man, and this passage of Hebrews is going to emphasize His humanity. It was through His humanity, not His deity, that He won the strategic victory of the angelic conflict.
4. The Bible is the only source of revelation with regard to God, and God the Son is the only revealed member of the Godhead. He was revealed in many ways in the Old Testament, but He is revealed in only one way in the New Testament. These two testaments are brought together in a very dramatic beginning in verse 5 and going down to verse 13. This

is a very dramatic passage. Why? Because this is the New Testament quoting the Old Testament as documentation concerning Christ winning the angelic conflict.

5. Therefore, the completed Bible, the Old and New Testaments, is the only source of revelation regarding Jesus Christ. It is the only source of revelation regarding the Church Age from the resurrection of Christ to the Rapture, and it is the only source of revelation regarding the Tribulation, the Second Advent of Jesus Christ, the Millennial Kingdom and the Eternal State. All of this plus much more is involved in the phrase **“in these last days.”** It should be noted that the Church Age did not begin until fifty days after the resurrection of Jesus Christ, yet it was the resurrection of Christ that was one of the primary messages of the early church.

Literally, “In these last days.”

SUMMARY REVIEW

1. We must always keep in mind that the book of Hebrews is a very difficult book to interpret. So we must always stay focused with regard to concentration and motivation. In other words, we must always keep alert, spiritually.
2. Hebrews is a unique book. It is unique in the doctrines it covers and it is unique as to whom it was written. Early documents going back to the second and third centuries tell us that this book was written to the Hebrew believers. Many Bibles even say “To the Hebrews,” not just “Hebrews.” It is very significant to note that this book was written to the Hebrews. In our contemporary language of today I suppose it would say “To the Jews.” But that is not what was meant at the time of writing.
3. Abraham was the first Hebrew, but he was not necessarily the first Jew. He left his home in Ur of the Chaldeans (Gen 11:31) and came into the promised land and was called a Hebrew. One meaning of the word Hebrew is, “one who crosses over.” Abraham, when he left Ur of the Chaldeans crossed over from polytheism, or the belief in many gods, to the belief in the One true, infinite, eternal God. Therefore, he was the “crossover.” He was a Hebrew, a believer in one God.

The descendants of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob were Hebrews. All the descendants of Abraham were not Hebrews. Abraham fathered both Isaac and Ishmael. Ishmael was not a Hebrew while Isaac was. In other words, Isaac believed in the God of Israel, Jesus Christ, and Ishmael did not. Only the believers in the God of Israel were true Hebrews.

In the Bible a Hebrew is always a descendant of Abraham through Isaac and Jacob, because Isaac and Jacob believed in Jesus Christ as He was revealed at that time.

4. The term Jew did not come into existence until after the return from the Babylonian captivity about 536 BC. After the 70 year captivity the two southern tribes, Judah and Benjamin returned. Judah was the largest and the most powerful of the tribes that returned from captivity. The name Jew is actually a condensed version of the word Judah. So the word Jew actually came into existence after the Babylonian captivity.

Generally speaking, today, the words, Jew and Hebrew, are used interchangeably, but theologically there is a difference. The word Jew generally has reference to the Mosaic Law as a religious system, hence, Judaism. Whereas the word, Hebrew, was given to Abraham and his descendants through Jacob 430 years before the Mosaic Law was given.

In Phil 3:5 Paul said that he was **from the tribe of Benjamin, a HEBREW of the HEBREWS.....** (NIV) (Emphasis provided by the author). He did not say that he was s JEW of the JEWS.

Therefore, it is important to emphasize that this book was written to the Hebrews. But we must also remember that II Tim 3:16-17 tells us that **All Scripture is God-breathed** (All Scripture from Genesis to Revelation) **and is useful** (beneficial) **for teaching, rebuking, correcting and training in righteousness, (17) so that the man of God may be thoroughly equipped for every good work.** (NIV) (Explanation given by the author)

5. Hebrews is a glorious book with a glorious truth, and most of its teachings are not taught in this depth anywhere else in the Bible. For example, the present priestly ministry of Jesus Christ, or what He is doing on our behalf right now is presented and emphasized in the book of Hebrews as it is nowhere else in the Bible. This truth can only be understood in the light of the historical background of this book.
6. There were many Jews who believed in Jesus Christ as their Savior, but they looked at Him as simply a continuation of the Mosaic Law, a continuation of the Old Testament system. So they took their new belief in Jesus Christ and went back to the temple and continued in the

sacrifices and the offerings of the Old Mosaic system. But that wasn't all. These Jews also believed that before Gentiles could come to God they must accept Judaism and the Mosaic Law. This was the major problem that the Apostle Paul encountered throughout his ministry. Everywhere Paul went there were Jewish legalistic teachers who followed him and tried to convince the new believers that they must adhere to or follow the Mosaic Law, and that belief in Jesus Christ was not enough. It was a good start, but the adherence to the Mosaic Law was a necessity.

One of the greatest problems of the first century church was legalism. Legalism is also one of the greatest problems in the church today. The attempt is made to merge law and grace, but it cannot be done.

Illustration: If you have 100 tons of grace and you add one ounce of law you no longer have grace. Grace is the exclusion of law; where you have law you cannot have grace and where you have grace you cannot have law. These two cannot be mixed although people have tried to do it in every generation since the first century. I Cor 5:6,**Don't you know that a little yeast** (leaven, referring to law) **works through the whole batch of dough?** (grace under the New Covenant to the Church) (NIV). Also Rom 6:14,**you are not under law, but under grace.** Rom 11:6, **And if by grace, then it is no longer by works** (by the law which emphasized works); **if it were, grace would no longer be grace.** (NIV)

In the Old Testament many Gentiles turned to the God of Abraham and embraced Judaism because they hated the polytheistic religions with the homosexuality and fornication that went with them. Even though a Gentile accepted the God of Abraham and placed himself under the Mosaic Law, he was still classified as a low class citizen in Israel. Many Gentiles made the decision to become low class citizens in the Jewish community rather than being a first class citizen in the immoral degenerate Gentile economy.

Then along came Jesus Christ, the Son of God in the flesh, and after Him came the apostles to the Church, and they said that now the Jew and the Gentile are to be the same in Christ! There is a new system of grace that replaces the old worn-out system of the Mosaic Law. So the writer of Hebrews is telling the Jews to leave their old system of the Mosaic Law and cling to the new system of grace based on knowledge of Bible doctrine. The writer of Hebrews is encouraging these Hebrews to go on to spiritual maturity in the knowledge of the Messiah that has been revealed.

Literally, “In these last days.”

Hath spoken - ἐλάλησεν – ELALESEN. First aorist active indicative third person singular of the verb λαλέω – LALEO. Means “to speak, to communicate.”

AORIST TENSE (culminative): views the action of the verb in its entirety but emphasizes the end result. This aorist tense speaks of finality, it refers to the completion of something.

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject produces the action of the verb. God produces the action of speaking or communicating.

INDICATIVE MOOD: the mood of absolute dogmatic reality. This emphasizes the absolute dogmatic reality of God speaking or communicating in these last days.

Literally, “In these last days He has spoken (in finality).”

Unto us - ἡμῖν – HUMIN. Dative plural of the pronoun ἡμεῖς – HEMEIS. This is a dative of advantage. We are the recipients and beneficiaries of things never known before.

The Old Testament prophets longed to know what God was about to reveal to us, but they were never allowed. Does God treat all people equally? No! We are living in one of the most dramatic moments of all human history. We are living at a time when Satan and the forces of evil have been totally defeated by Jesus Christ in the great spiritual war. We will see this in Hebrews chapter two. After winning the strategic victory of the spiritual war, it is now only a matter of clearing up a few details. One of these little details is in the Church Age, in which the completion of the body of Christ is the issue. The bride of Christ is being called out.

Principle: Christ could not have a body and bride until He became a member of the human race and won the strategic victory in the spiritual war. This war is called the angelic conflict. It started before man was created. Christ won this war in His humanity by His work on the cross. Then His resurrection, ascension and His session to the right hand of the Father at the throne in heaven.

We need to look at the prophetic implications of the coming of the Jewish Messiah and His rejection by His own people.

Daniel 9:24-27;

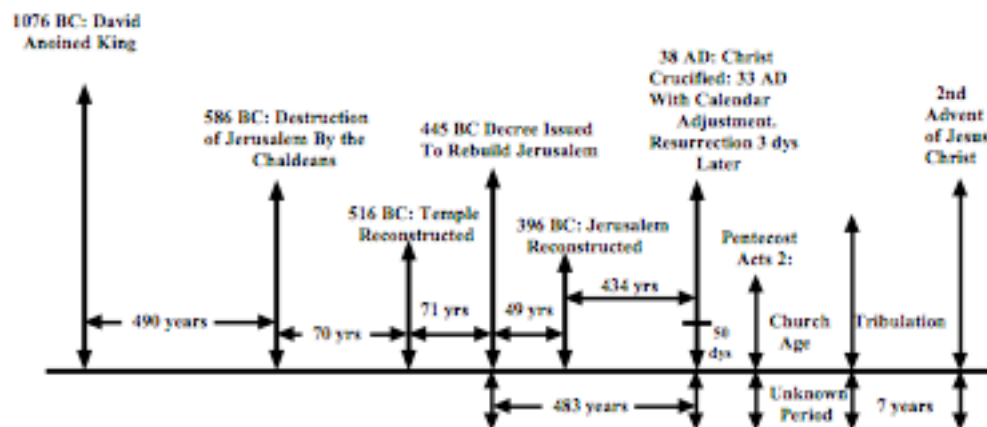
The interruption of the Jewish Age and the insertion of the Church Age

Seventy sevens (490 years) **are cut out of time for your people and for your city to bring an end to the fifth cycle of discipline** (the removal of the curse on the Jews of being scattered), **to seal up sin by restraining it** (literally, “to restrain sin,” referring to the Millennial reign of Jesus Christ when sin will be restrained on the earth), **to make reconciliation for iniquity** (the regathering of Israel to her homeland), **to bring in everlasting righteousness** (the Millennial kingdom), **to seal up the vision of prophecy** (complete all prophecy pertaining to the Jews and Israel) **and to anoint the holy of holies** (the dedication of the Millennial Temple). (25) **Therefore, know and understand that from the issuing of the decree to restore and rebuild Jerusalem to the coming of the Messiah the Prince will be seven sevens** (49 years), **plus sixty-two sevens** (434 years for a total of 483 years). **The street system will be rebuilt, and the wall will be rebuilt, even during troublesome times.** (26) **And after the sixty-two sevens** (434 years), **the Messiah will be killed, but not for himself, and the people of the prince that will come** (the Romans) **shall destroy the city and the sanctuary** (70 AD). **The end will come like a flood, and there will be war and desolation all the way to the end, as it has been decreed** (70 AD marks the interruption of the Jewish Age. The Church Age began in 30 AD and was coterminous with the Age of Israel for 40 years). (27) (The entire course of the Church Age occurs between verses 26 & 27. Vs 27 begins with the beginning of the Tribulation period and the Antichrist. The Rapture of the Church occurs between verses 26 & 27). **And the Roman prince that is to come** (the reign of Antichrist, the dictator of the revived Roman Empire at the end of the age) **will ratify a treaty with many Jews for one seven** (7 years, the length of the Tribulation period), **and in the middle of the seven** (in the middle of the Tribulation) **he** (the Antichrist; the ruler of the revived Roman Empire) **will cause the sacrifices and oblations to stop, and the abomination of desolation will occur in one wing of the temple and will continue even to the end of the dispensation** (the Antichrist will place a statue of himself in the holy place of the rebuilt Jewish temple in Jerusalem), **and whatever is decreed will be poured out on the desolator** (the end of the Tribulation period culminating in the Second Advent of the Messiah, Jesus Christ). (Expanded translation from the studies of R.H. Kreger)

Summary of Daniel 9:24-27;

1. From the time of David down to 586 BC the Jews failed to keep their Sabbatical years until they accumulated 70 over a 490 year period.
2. Therefore, in 586 BC the Jews were conquered and Jerusalem and the temple were destroyed, and the people taken into slavery to Babylon. They spent 70 years in captivity, the same number of years as the Sabbatical years they missed.

3. In 516 BC the temple was rebuilt, but the Jewish time clock did not restart until the city of Jerusalem was rebuilt in 445 BC.
4. According the revelation given to Daniel the Jews were to be given 490 years from the time of the rebuilding of Jerusalem to the coming of the Messiah and the establishment of the Millennial Kingdom.
5. But when Jesus came and ministered to the Jewish people during His three year ministry, He was rejected by His own people (John 1:11, **He came to that which was his own, but his own did not receive him,.....**) (NIV)
6. Therefore, the establishment of the Millennial Kingdom was postponed, and instead of a New Covenant given to Israel, a New Covenant was established for a new dispensation called The Church Age. The Jewish Age has been suspended, and the Jewish Millennial Kingdom has been postponed until the Church Age runs its course according to the plan of God as revealed in the Epistles of the New Testament.



Biblical Timeline

The dates given above are approximate. The discrepancy in dating is caused by the differences between Hebrew and Assyrian dating, as well as discrepancies between the Masoretic text, Samaritan Pentateuch, and Septuagint.

Another result of the Jewish rejection of their Messiah is so that the bride of Christ could be taken from others rather than Jews alone. The bride of Christ will also be taken from the Gentiles. Therefore, the bride will be unique just as the groom is unique. Once a person believes in Jesus Christ in this age, he ceases to be a Jew or a Gentile and he becomes a member of the

body of Christ known as the Church. One day in the future all those who comprise the Church will be formed into the bride of Christ by means of the Rapture and resurrection of all Church Age believers. That is the next event on God's prophetic timetable, not the Second Advent, not the war of Armageddon, not the coming of the antichrist, but the Rapture and resurrection of all Church Age believers. We are living in a very dramatic time of human history. (Note: the term body of Christ refers to all believers in Christ on earth and in heaven, while the term bride of Christ refers to all believers in resurrection bodies after the judgment seat of Christ.)

Literally, "In these last days He has spoken to us (with finality)."

By his son - ἐν υἱῷ – EN HUIO. First of all we have the preposition ἐν – EN plus the dative instrumental singular of the noun υἱός – HUIOS. There is no pronoun or definite article here. The absence of the definite article calls attention to the uniqueness of the noun, which is "**Son.**" You can translate this "By means of Son." The Greek emphasizes the word "**Son.**" To make a smoother English we could insert the article "the" translated "By means of the Son."

Literally, "In these last days He has spoken to us (with finality) by means of the Son."

Summary Review

1. There are separate revelations in different passages of the Old Testament regarding Jesus Christ.
2. Each revelation sets forth a specific truth about Jesus Christ.
3. In the Old Testament each generation of believers needed a fresh voice, so a different prophet was raised up by God.
4. But today all truth is set forth in the God-Man, Jesus Christ.
John 1:14, **The Word (Jesus Christ) became flesh and made his dwelling among us. We have seen his glory, the glory of the One and Only, who came from the Father, full of grace and truth.** (NIV)

John 1:17, **For the law was given through Moses; grace and truth came through Jesus Christ.** (NIV)

5. The Old Testament dealt with a type and shadow revelation, but with the incarnation and the manifestation of Jesus Christ in the flesh the types and shadows were removed. They were done away with, they were set aside, they were abolished along with the Mosaic Law.

6. Jesus Christ is the reality that removes all the shadows. This will come out in our future study in Hebrews chapter ten. Heb 10:1, **The law is only a shadow of the good things that are coming — not the realities themselves. For this reason it can never, by the same sacrifices repeated endlessly year after year, make perfect those who draw near to worship.** (NIV)

Heb 10:5-7, **Therefore, when Christ came into the world, he said: “Sacrifice and offering you did not desire, but a body you prepared for me; (6) with burnt offering and sin offerings you were not pleased.” (7) Then I said, “Here I am — it is written about me in the scroll — I have come to do your will, O God.”** (NIV)

7. While the revelation of the two testaments differ in mechanics and in content, the source is always the same. ὁ θεός – HO THEOS, “The God,” and the subject is always the same, Ἰησοῦς Χριστός – IESOUS CHRISTOS, Jesus Christ.
8. Therefore, all revelation focuses on Jesus Christ who is the victor in the angelic conflict.

Literally, “In these last days He has spoken to us (with finality) by means of the Son.”

Whom he hath appointed heir of all things -

Whom - ὃν – HON. Accusative masculine singular of the pronoun ὅς – HOS. This refers to Jesus Christ. He is both the subject and the object of divine revelation.

He hath appointed - ἔθηκεν – ETHEKEN. First aorist active indicative third person singular of the verb τίθημι – TITHEMI. Means, “To appoint, to allocate, to assign, to decree.” The subject is God the Father, the object is Jesus Christ. As the planner, God the Father **“appointed”** “The Son.”

AORIST TENSE: refers to the point of time in eternity past when God the Father appointed God the Son as the Heir of all things. Psalm 2:7-8, **I Will proclaim the decree of the Lord: He said to me, “You are my Son; today I have become your Father. (8) Ask of me, and I will make the nations your inheritance, the ends of the earth your possession.”** (NIV)

ACTIVE VOICE: God the Father produced the action in eternity past of appointing the Son as a part of the divine plan. You and I are in the divine plan because we are in Christ. The sooner you grow to spiritual maturity and the sooner you develop occupation with Jesus Christ the sooner you will begin to have that love response toward God that is so important.

INDICATIVE MOOD: refers to the absolute reality of the appointment of Jesus Christ as the heir of all things. He is the heir only because He is the victor of the angelic conflict. Jesus Christ was there when the appointment was made, He was there when the decrees were decreed and He is also the subject and basis of it.

Literally, “In these last days He has spoken to us (with finality) by means of the Son, whom He has appointed.”

Through verse three, seven things are given in describing Jesus Christ.

1. His heirship: From the phrase, “**Heir of all things.**” (vs 2)
2. His creatorship: From the phrase, “**By whom he made the worlds.**” (vs 2)
3. His radiance: From the phrase, “**The brightness of his glory.**” (vs 3)
4. His being: From the phrase, “**The express image of his person.**” (vs 3)
5. His administration: From the phrase, “**Upholding all things.**” (vs 3)
6. His sacrifice: From the phrase, “**Who by himself purged our sins.**” (vs 3)
7. His exaltation: From the phrase, “**Sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high.**” (vs 3)

Literally, “In these last days He has spoken to us (with finality) by means of the Son, whom He has appointed.”

Heir - κληρονόμον – KLERONOMON. Accusative masculine singular of the noun κληρονόμος – KLERONOMOS. Means “heir and possessor.”

Of all things - πάντων – PANATON. Genitive neuter plural of the adjective πᾶς – PAS. Means “all, every.” In the neuter gender it means “all things.” This means that as the victor of the angelic conflict Jesus Christ is going to be the heir of both angels and mankind. Christ inherits everything within these two systems of creation. Christ inherits all kingdoms. He inherits the Old Testament saints, all Church Age believers, all Tribulational believers, the Millennial believers and all elect angels; everything else is thrown into the lake of fire. Those who refuse to acknowledge Him as the Savior are totally and completely disowned and thrown into the lake of fire where they will suffer for ever and ever, an existence without end. But Jesus Christ will inherit everything the Father has placed under His dominion.

Doctrine of Heirship

1. As the victor of the angelic conflict, and as a part of the divine decrees, Jesus Christ is the Heir of all things. Heb 1:2 literally says, "In these last days He (God the Father) has spoken to us (with finality) by means of the Son, (Jesus Christ) whom He has appointed the Heir of all things." (Expanded translation of Robert H. Kreger)
2. Many have wondered why Christ is called the Son of God. Does that make Him inferior? No! That makes Him the Heir. Sonship means Heirship. In other words, heirship is based on sonship. John 1:12, **Yet to all who received him, to those who believed in his name, he gave the right to become children of God.** (NIV)

Rom 8:16-17, **The Spirit himself testifies with our spirit that we are God's children. (17) Now if we are children, then we are heirs – heirs of God and co-heirs with Christ.....**

Gal 3:26, **You are all sons of God through faith in Christ Jesus.** (NIV)

The phrase "**Heir of all things**" tells us that Jesus Christ has the right of primogeniture, which is the exclusive right of inheritance belonging to the firstborn or the oldest son. Jesus Christ has the right of Heirship because He is not only classified as the Son of God, but He is also called the firstborn in Col 1:15, **He is the image of the invisible God, the FIRSTBORN over all creation.** (NIV)
(Emphasis added by the author)

In the Old Testament the firstborn son had the right of heirship. He had the right of primogeniture. Even if the Jewish family had only one son, he could be rightly called "the firstborn." By that they were not referring to chronology, but to position. The one who was the firstborn was the heir. He inherited all that the family possessed. Jesus Christ, the One through whom God has spoken in finality, He is "**the Heir of all things,**" and if He is the heir of all things then it would be beneficial to everyone to listen to what He has to say. For example: Jesus said in John 14:6, **.....I am the way and the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me.** (NIV)

3. Heirship is based on the death of another. We inherit the eternal kingdom of Jesus Christ on the basis of His death, burial, resurrection,

ascension and session. Rom 5:8, **But God demonstrates his own love for us in this: While we were still sinners, Christ DIED for us.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author). I Cor 15:3-4, **For what I received I passed on to you as of first importance: that Christ DIED for our sins according to the Scriptures, (4) that he was buried, that he was raised on the third day according to the Scriptures.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

4. To inherit from God one must possess the life of God, i.e., eternal life. John 3:16, **For God so loved the world that he gave his one and only Son, that whoever believes in him shall not perish but have ETERNAL LIFE.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

John 3:36, **Whoever believes in the Son has ETERNAL LIFE, but whoever rejects the Son will not see life, for God's wrath (judgment) remains on him.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

John 6:47, **I tell you the truth, he who believes has EVERLASTING LIFE.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

John 10:27-28, **My sheep listen to my voice; I know them, and they follow me. (28) I give them ETERNAL LIFE, and they shall never perish; no one can snatch them out of my hand.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Romans 6:23, **For the wages of sin (the old sin nature, not personal sins) is death, but the gift of God is ETERNAL LIFE in Christ Jesus our Lord.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by author)

I John 5:11-13, **And this is the testimony: God has given us ETERNAL LIFE, and this life is in his Son. (12) He who has the Son has life; he who does not have the Son of God does not have life. (13) I write these things to you who believe in the name of the Son of God so that you may know that you have ETERNAL LIFE.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

5. To inherit from God, one must possess the perfect absolute righteousness of God. Matt 6:33, **But seek first his kingdom (salvation and imputed righteousness) and HIS RIGHTEOUSNESS (Bible doctrine).....** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Romans 3:22, **This RIGHTEOUSNESS from God comes through faith in Jesus Christ to all who believe.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Romans 5:17, **For if, by the trespass of the one man (Adam),**

death (spiritual death) **reigned through that one man, how much more will those who receive God's abundant provision of grace and of the gift of RIGHTEOUSNESS reign in life through the one man, Jesus Christ.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

II Corinthians 5:21, **God made him who had no sin to be sin for us, so that in him we might become the RIGHTEOUSNESS of God.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Phil 3:8-9, **.....I consider everything a loss compared to the surpassing greatness of knowing Christ Jesus my Lord, for whose sake I have lost all things. I consider them rubbish, that I may gain Christ (9) and be found in him, not having a RIGHTEOUSNESS of my own that comes from the law, but that which is through faith in Christ— the RIGHTEOUSNESS that comes from God and is by faith.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

6. In order to inherit we must be justified, or made righteous in the sight of God. Romans 3:23-24, **For all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God, (24) and are JUSTIFIED** (made righteous) **freely by his grace through the redemption that came by Christ Jesus.** (NIV: emphasis added by the author)

Romans 5:1, **Therefore, since we have been JUSTIFIED** (made righteous) **through faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Romans 10:4, **Christ is the end of the law so that there may be righteousness** (JUSTIFICATION) **for everyone who believes.** (NIV)

7. Therefore, salvation is the first and basic requirement for our joint inheritance. Colossians 1:12, **...giving thanks to the Father, who has qualified you to share in the INHERITANCE of the saints in the kingdom of light.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)
8. Heirship is related to the Doctrine of Divine Decrees in the sense of sharing the destiny of Christ. Ephesians 1:11, **In him we were also chosen, having been predestined according to the plan of him who works out everything in conformity with the purpose of his will.** (NIV) Jesus Christ is the only one who has ever been predestined. When we believe in Him and are saved, we then share His predestination.
9. Heirship in the Church Age is related to the New Covenant. Hebrews 9:15, **For this reason Christ is the mediator of a new**

covenant, that those who are called may receive the promised ETERNAL INHERITANCE..... (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author.)

10. The principle of our inheritance is related to eternal security. I Pet 1:4-5. **...and into an INHERITANCE that can never perish, spoil or fade—kept in heaven for you, (5) who through faith are shielded by God’s power until the coming of the salvation that is ready to be revealed in the last time.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)
11. Our inheritance was provided on the basis of grace: Galatians 3:29, **If you belong to Christ, then you are Abraham’s seed, and HEIRS according to the promise** (grace). (NIV) Emphasis added by the author)
12. The indwelling of the Holy Spirit is the down payment on our inheritance. Ephesians 1:13-14, **And you also were included in Christ when you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation. Having believed, you were marked in him with a seal, the promised Holy Spirit, (14) WHO IS A DEPOSIT GUARANTEEING OUR INHERITANCE** until the redemption of those who are God’s possession—to the praise of his glory. (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)
13. Our inheritance comes in three stages.
 - A. As of the moment of salvation we are in the family of God forever. Salvation is not an inheritance. Salvation is a gift. It is a birthright. It places you in the family of God, the position to inherit.
 - B. We have a designated heritage in time. Heb 11:7, **By faith Noah, when warned about things not yet seen, in holy fear built an ark to save his family. By his faith he condemned the world and became HEIR of the righteousness that comes by faith.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)
 - C. We have a heritage forever: I Peter 1:4-5. **And into an inheritance that can never perish, spoil or fade—kept in heaven for you, (5) who through faith are shielded by God’s power until the coming of the salvation that is ready to be revealed in the last time.** (NIV)
14. The spiritually mature believer has a temporal inheritance in this life as a member of the family of God. Heb 6:12, **We do not want you to become lazy, but to imitate those who through faith and patience INHERIT what has been promised.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

I Peter 3:9, **Do not repay evil with evil or insult with insult, but with blessing, because to this you were called so that you may INHERIT a blessing.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

15. Maximum Bible doctrine in the soul is the means of receiving blessing in time because it gives us knowledge of our inheritance in the future. Ephesians 1:18, **I pray also that the eyes of your heart may be enlightened in order that you may know the hope to which he has called you, (to know) the riches of his glorious inheritance in the saints.** (NIV)
16. The blessings of the believer in time are based on the divine decrees.
 - A. According to Eph 1:11 God knew exactly how far you would advance spiritually before you were ever born. **In him we were also chosen, having been predestined according to the plan of him who works out everything in conformity with the purpose of his will,....** (NIV)
 - B. God only provides for you as much as you have the capacity. When you have an inheritance which God has provided for you in eternity past, your job is to concentrate on Bible doctrine and not worry about what the blessings are or when you will receive them. These blessings will come naturally with your capacity, and you will prosper from every direction, in every area of life. But if you knew ahead of time what your blessings in time would be, you would have a tendency to be slack in your Bible study. You would have a tendency to concentrate on your promised blessings and not on the Word of God. Therefore, the concentration on the Word of God must come first.

Verse 2 literally says, "In these last days He (God) has spoken to us (with finality) in the Son, whom He has appointed Heir of all things."

If Jesus Christ is the Son of God, and He is, then He is the Heir of all that God possesses. Everything that exists can only find its true meaning when it comes under the control of Jesus Christ.

Even the Psalms predicted that Jesus Christ would one day be the Heir of all that God possessed. Psalm 2:6-9, **I (God the Father) have installed my King (Jesus Christ) on Zion, my holy hill** (this refers to enthronement). (7) **I will proclaim the decree of the Lord. He (God the Father) said to me (Jesus Christ), "You are my Son; today I have become your Father.** (8) **Ask of me, and I will make the nations your inheritance, the ends of the earth your possession.** (9) **You will rule them with an iron scepter; you will dash them to pieces like pottery."** (NIV) (Explanation provided by the author)

The Holy Spirit tells us through the Apostle Paul in Colossians 1:16 that all things were not only created by Jesus Christ but also for Him, **For by him all things were created: things in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or powers or rulers or authorities; all things were created by him and for him.** (NIV)

Romans 11:36 says, **For from him and through him and to him are all things. To him be the glory forever! Amen.** (NIV) Everything that exists, exists for Jesus Christ. What truth better proves His equality with God the Father?

Revelation 5:1-6; (NIV)

In Revelation Chapter five God is pictured sitting on a throne with a scroll in His hand. (This is language of accommodation. We know that God does not have hands, but so that we can better understand the concept the word hand is used to describe God sitting on the throne holding a scroll.)

Vs 1: **Then I saw in the right hand of him who sat on the throne a scroll with writing on both sides, sealed with seven seals.**

This scroll is the title deed to the earth and all that is in it. It is the deed for the Heir, the One who has the right to take the earth and rule it. In New Testament times Roman law required that a will had to be sealed seven times to protect it from tampering. As you rolled it up, you sealed it every turn or so for seven times. The seals were not to be broken until after the death of the one who left the will.

Vs 2: **And I saw a mighty angel proclaiming with a loud voice, "Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?"**

The angel wondered who the rightful heir to the earth was. Who has the right to possess it and to rule it? I want you to notice that we know more than the angels.

Vs 3: **But no one in heaven or on earth or under the earth could open the scroll or even look inside it.**

Being perplexed and saddened, John said,

Vs 4: **I wept and wept because no one was found who was worthy to open the scroll and look inside.**

Vs 5: **Then one of the elders said to me, "Do not weep! See, the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has triumphed. He is able to open the scroll and its seven seals.**

As John continued to watch he saw;

Vs 6:**a Lamb, looking as if it has been slain, standing in the center of the throne, encircled by the four living creatures and the elders. He had seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven spirits of God sent out into all the earth.**

Jesus Christ, the Lamb, came and took the scroll out of the right hand of God, Why? Because He, and He alone has the right to take it. He is the Heir of the earth. (Note: we need to remember that John did not possess a completed canon of Scripture. Therefore, he did not know all that you and I have the potential of knowing from the completed Bible available today.)

Revelation chapter six begins the description of the tribulation period, the first step of Jesus Christ in taking back the earth, which is rightfully His. One by one our Lord unrolls the scroll and breaks its seals. As each seal is broken, He takes further possession and control of His inheritance. Finally in Revelation 11:15, **The seventh angel sounded his trumpet, and there were loud voices in heaven, which said: "The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ."** When He unrolls the scroll and breaks the seventh seal and the seventh trumpet sounds, the earth is His.

In his sermon at Pentecost recorded in Acts 2:36, Peter told his Jewish audience: **Therefore let all Israel be assured of this: God has made this Jesus, whom you crucified, both Lord and Christ.** (NIV) This carpenter who died nailed to a cross is, in fact, the King of all kings, and the Lord of all lords. He will rule the world. Satan knew this truth when he approached Jesus in the wilderness (desert) and tempted Him to take control of the world in the wrong way, by bowing down to him, Satan. As the temporary usurper of God's rule over the earth, Satan continually tries every means possible to prevent the true Heir from receiving His inheritance.

When Christ first came to earth, an event known as the Incarnation, or the First Advent, **He was rich, yet for your sakes he became poor, so that you through His poverty we might become rich** (NIV II Cor 8:9). He possessed nothing for Himself. He had **"nowhere to lay his head"** (Luke 9:58). Even His clothes were taken from Him when He died. He was buried in a tomb that belonged to someone else. But when Jesus Christ comes back to the earth again He will completely and eternally inherit all things. And wonder of wonders, because we have trusted Him we are to be **"joint heirs with Christ"** (KJV Rom 8:16-17). When we enter into His eternal kingdom we will jointly possess all that He possesses. His marvelous inheritance will be ours as well as His.

Even though Jesus Christ is the Heir of all that God possesses, and even though He offers to share His inheritance with anyone who will personally believe in Him, many will still reject Him. Many rejected God as He revealed Himself in the Old Testament. And now God has perfectly and completely revealed Himself in the New Testament through His Son, and the majority of people in the world continue to reject Him. Jesus said in Matthew 7:13-14, **Enter through the narrow gate. For wide is the gate and broad is the road that leads to destruction, and many enter through it. (14) But small is the gate and narrow the road that leads to life, and only a few find it** (NIV). Read also Matthew 21:33-45,

Hebrews 1:1-2,

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 1: “In many parts (of the Old Testament) and in many different ways in the past, God spoke to our forefathers by means of the prophets.”

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 2: “In these last days (of the Jewish Age) He has spoken to us (with finality) through His Son whom He has appointed the Heir of all things.....”

By whom also he made the worlds - There is much more here than just the creation of the heavens and the earth.

By whom also - δι' οὗ καὶ DI OU KAI. First of all we have the preposition διὰ – DIA plus the genitive case of the pronoun ὅς – HOS and should be translated “through whom.” This means “through Jesus Christ.” This is the person whom God the Father appointed in eternity past. With this there is also the Greek conjunction καὶ – KAI translated “**also**” means that Jesus Christ is appointed by God the Father to do much more than reveal the message of God to man. This appointment includes a large number of things. God not only appointed Christ and provided grace for us, but He also provided divine establishment solutions, spiritual principles, spiritual dynamics and the preservation of human history. But at the same time there had to be a person around whom all of these things would revolve. And Jesus Christ agreed to become a member of the human race and to solve the problems of history before the world began and before man was created.

Literally, “Through whom also.”

He made - ἐποίησεν – EPOIESEN. First aorist active indicative third person singular of the verb ποιέω – POIEO. Means “to do, to make, to form, to arrange, to design.” The aorist tense is a Greek past tense referring to the dateless past when the Lord accomplished all this.

The worlds - τούς αἰῶνας – TOUS AIONAS. First of all there is a definite article TOUS correctly translated **“the.”** Then we have the accusative masculine plural of the noun αἰών – AION. Means “a period of time of significant character, an era, an age, a state of things marking out an era, a dispensation, the present order of nature, limitless duration, eternity, the material universe” just to name a few. The common Greek word for world is κόσμος – KOSMOS. But this word is not used here. The writer of Hebrews as controlled by the Holy Spirit uses the word AION. As we have seen the word AION can be used in a number of different ways. Therefore the question is, how is it used here? What does it mean in our passage?

Jesus Christ is the One responsible for creating the physical universe, He is also responsible for creating time, space, energy, matter, angels and mankind. Jesus Christ created the whole universe and everything that makes it function and He did it all without any effort. John 1:1-3, **In the beginning was the Word (Jesus Christ), and the Word (Jesus Christ) was with God, and the Word (Jesus Christ) was God. (2) He was with God in the beginning. (3) Through him ALL THINGS WERE MADE; without him nothing was made that has been made.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author) The only effort in creation is speaking, **“And God said,”** Gen 1:3.

Col 1:16, **For by him all things were created: things in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or powers or rulers or authorities; all things were created by him and for him.** (NIV).

Therefore, when it says in Hebrews 1:2 that Jesus Christ was appointed **“the heir of all things,”** this little word AION refers to the all things.

Therefore the word AION refers to the reaches of space, all the ages of time, which includes all material objects and all successive events that have run down through time from the creation of the entire universe. It also includes all of the angels, fallen and elect, all human beings, saved and unsaved, all powers, all dominion, and all authorities. It includes all things right down to the present time; down through time, to the end of time and on into eternity. This little word AION is very vast in its meaning. The creation of “the ages” has the connotation of including the means by which the plan and purpose of God are gradually unfolding. And the Son is the divine agent not only in the original creation of the physical universe, but also in the operation and management of that universe and all its creatures down through the ages of time. That makes Him better than all the prophets.

Therefore this word AION refers to the ages of time or dispensations. The dispensational view of history and time is the only correct view of history and time. The word AION refers to the “divine outline of all history from the prehistoric all the way down through future history.”

Literally, “Through whom He designed the ages (dispensations).”

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 2: “In these last days (of the Jewish Age) He (God) has spoken to us (with finality) through His unique Son whom He has appointed the Heir of all things, through whom He designed the ages (dispensations).”

S U M M A R Y P R I N C I P L E S

1. The ages or dispensations were not designed until after the appointment of the Heir. The Heir is Jesus Christ who was appointed first in the order of the decrees of God the Father. In other words, before God the Father ordered the creation of all things He first of all appointed the One who would inherit all the things created.
2. Therefore, the first thing that God did in eternity past was to appoint Jesus Christ as the Heir of all things. This is the key to everything else God does. When you believe in Jesus Christ as your personal Savior you become related to the key of human history as well as possessing eternal life. Most Christians have no idea what they will inherit when human history as we know it ends. There are lot of strange and erroneous ideas about our inheritance in eternity. But most Christians are very ignorant regarding this issue.
3. After God appointed Jesus Christ to be the Heir of all things, He then designed the ages or dispensations. It should be noted that God the Father is the designer of all things. It is the Son who carries out the will of the Father and inherits all things. The key to the ages, the key to time, space, energy and matter is the key to all history, and the key to the dispensations comes before any of these were designed. All of the laws, physical and spiritual, which guide and sustain all of creation reside in Jesus Christ. Jesus Christ fulfilled all that the Father designed.

Jesus Christ is the key to all history (angelic and human), and Bible doctrine is His thinking and Bible doctrine is all that we will ever need until the Second Advent, when He begins to rule in His eternal kingdom. It should be noted here that the 1,000 year Millennial

kingdom is the beginning of the eternal reign of Jesus Christ. At the end of the Millennial kingdom, the final resurrections and judgments will occur and the eternal rulership of Christ will continue on into the eternal state. But when He begins to rule, everything will be perfect. It is very important for Christians to understand that nothing in this life will ever be close to perfect until He rules. That is why He is called **“Wonderful Counselor** (dictator), **Mighty God, Everlasting Father** (Father of eternity), **Prince of Peace”** in Isaiah 9:6b (NIV). If you believe that things will get better before He returns, then you are totally ignorant regarding spiritual truth as found in the Bible.

As Christians we have lost our understanding of why the Lord has placed us here. We have become so concerned about physical things: healthcare, good paying jobs, and public education that we have become negligent about our spiritual lives. There is absolutely nothing in the physical realm that is worth neglecting our spiritual life. We should never expect things to improve, but if they do a little from time to time, thank God for it. There will never be a great improvement until the Lord Jesus Christ returns and rules the earth. What was just stated in this paragraph is frowned upon by most Bible believing Christians, which shows ignorance of Bible truth and is really blasphemy.

In all of the dispensations decreed by God the only successful form of government was that of a monarchy, if the monarch was enlightened.

Throughout the course of human history one of the worst forms of government has been a democracy. The only true democracy recorded in human history is the democracy of fifth century Athens. That democracy only lasted about 50 years. It fell apart in the midst of corruption and degeneracy. A true democracy is very close to anarchy and chaos. The more people who are involved in the operation of the government the worse the nation becomes, and the more confusing it becomes. The United States of America is a very confusing place in the time in which we live. We are not even a true democracy, that is only propaganda from the liberals. We have a republic. If the liberal leaders had their way, they would scrap our constitution and replace it with an absolute democracy, and that would all but destroy the United States of America.

4. When Jesus Christ returns He will rule the earth as an absolute monarch. He will not ask anyone else to give Him advice. He will make all of the decisions that have to be made with His own genius and

power. He will have rules and laws in His government that you never dreamed of, and He will have immediate punishment for all who break His rules and laws. There will be no “due process” under the rule of Jesus Christ. There will be many people who will become very unhappy and discontented by the end of His one thousand year reign. In fact, millions and possibly billions of people will rise up against Him at the end of the one thousand years, and will attempt to overthrow Him and His government. Is it possible that the ones who lead the revolt will be liberals? These people will be led by an angel, Satan, who will be released from his prison. How does Jesus Christ handle this worldwide rebellion? By killing those who rebel. Then He will throw Satan, all unbelievers and all fallen angels into the eternal lake of fire.

Jesus Christ as the Heir of all ages and dispensations knows how to stop crime, riots and war. He kills those who are guilty.

If human government would only follow that which is written down in the Word of God regarding nations, these nations could have peace in their time. These nations could also control crime in this way. But since the Word of God has been rejected by the majority of people and world leaders, there will be no true peace in the world. There will be no control of crime and violence.

5. Therefore, when God designed all of the ages and dispensations, He designed the last age or dispensation to be the best one. The last dispensation is not the Church Age. The last dispensation is the one in which Jesus Christ reigns as the absolute monarch. His reign will be a perfect reign because His kingdom will follow the plan of God designed for all kingdoms and governments. Only Jesus Christ can carry it out perfectly.
6. So what is really important in history? Jesus Christ is what is important in history. Jesus Christ is not only the Savior, but Jesus Christ is the only solution to man's problems historically as well as personally. No matter which way you turn you run into the fact that apart from the Lord Jesus Christ, life does not have real meaning. Those who have never accepted Jesus as Savior have meaningless lives apart from Him.

Therefore, if you want your life to have meaning, then believe in Jesus Christ as your personal Savior. If you have already done that, then as a Christian the only way your life can have purpose is to saturate your soul with Bible doctrine. Only the Word of God in your soul can make you what God wants you to be.

7. Jesus Christ is very patient, and in His patience He watches ignorant members of His own body (the church) as they constantly try to solve their personal, national and international problems. And if Christians look for solutions apart from the Bible and its doctrines, then they will stray away from the Lord and His blessings.

Today, Christians have lost sight of the fact that Jesus Christ is not only the answer to their problems at the Rapture and His Second Advent, but He is the answer to their problems right here and now as well. But here and now His answers are only found in His Word.

8. There is something else that Christians have lost sight of. The plan of God will continue unhindered throughout history regardless of the types of governments here on the earth. This means that the plan of God will advance in a nation even if that nation has slavery. Or even if a nation promotes racism, or terrorism, or injustice of all kinds. The Lord is not limited in His power in carrying out His plan. And to think so is blasphemy. Just because we have allowed our government to become anti-Christian and idiotic, it doesn't hinder the Lord in any way in this country. Because the Lord blesses and uses nations of all kinds based on the spiritual growth of the Christians in those nations, He does not bless nations based on the leadership of those nations. If He did, then our nation would have only been blessed a very few times in our history because we have had only a few good leaders down through the years.

The blessings of God are based on the spiritual lives of Christians living in that nation. Therefore, "As goes the Christian, so goes the nation." And the more Christians who reject the in-depth teaching of the Word of God and get involved in activism and legalism, the more you will see of violence, homosexuality, child abuse, corruption in high places and drug addiction. And you will also see new attempts to solve our problems of crime, racism and civil rights apart from God and His plan. I have already stated that no one can solve the problems of a nation except Jesus Christ.

PRINCIPLE: The answers to our problems in these United States of America are not more laws; we have too many laws already. The answers lie with Christians learning Bible doctrine and growing to spiritual maturity. Our nation's problems require a spiritual solution, and only Christians are qualified in this area. Christians are failing continually all over our great land. Not because they are sinners (we are all sinners), but they are failing because they are not placing the learning of the Word of God first in their lives.

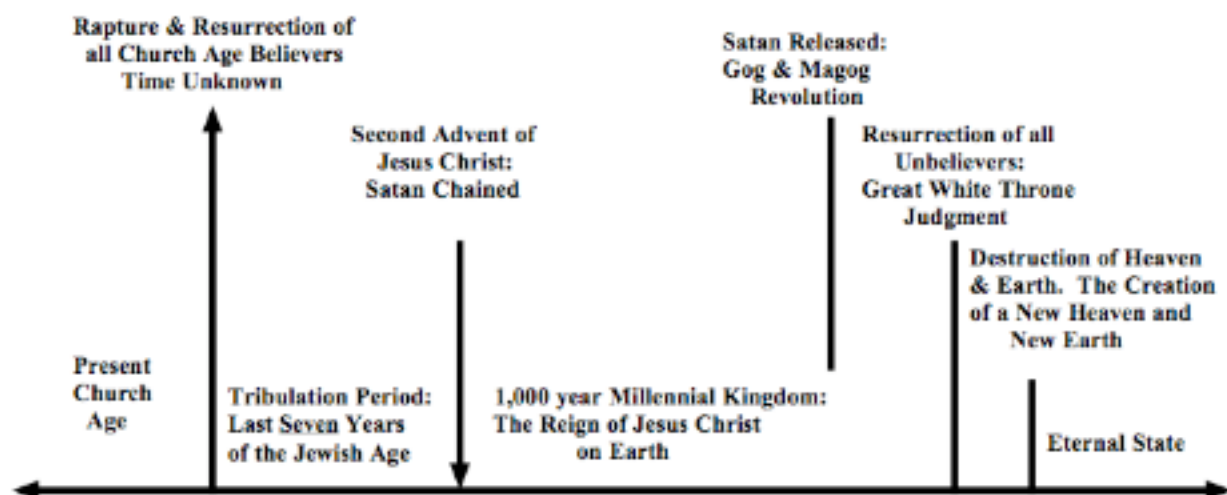
9. Billions and billions of years ago God did not design the ages or dispensations around the different types of governments that would exist on the earth. In fact, He did not design the ages around an election in the United States every four years. We do not have dispensations divided by election years.

The solutions to our problems are not in people, or laws, or education, or in the ones who control the government. Also, religion is not a solution. The solutions to our problems are in the Lord Jesus Christ and His doctrines.

10. There is no human thinking in Bible doctrine. But there is a lot of human thinking in religion, and in our government and its leaders. Human thinking can very easily become anti-Christian, anti-God and anti-Bible. Because Jesus Christ and His doctrines are what history is all about, the continual intake of Bible doctrine in the filling of the Holy Spirit is the only way of understanding divine viewpoint and is the only answer.
11. God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit can outthink all of us anytime, anywhere. There is no creature in existence whose thoughts can compare with the thoughts of the Godhead. We have that fantastic thinking at our disposal today. It is called Bible doctrine.
12. The Word of God tells us that there is only one key to history, and that key is Jesus Christ. God the Father appointed Him as the Heir of all things. He will inherit all things, and only those who are in Him through faith will share in that fantastic inheritance. He is the only one who will end history with a reign that will cover the last 1,000 years.
13. Through all of human history since the fall of man in the garden, the human race has been given free expression of its free will, but it never gets anywhere. That is the story of history. Man has full expression, man is free to use his freedom. In other words, man fights for freedom, man struggles for freedom and man dies for freedom. Then in his freedom he makes decisions that destroy his freedom and places him back into slavery and bondage. Then the struggle begins all over again. Why does it happen that way? Because man is not capable of handling freedom. Only Jesus Christ can handle freedom correctly.

Therefore, human history proves that when you give man his free will, and the freedom to express his free will, he doesn't do anything but foul up history. Many times history gets so twisted that they can't even write it down correctly in a book.

14. There have always been a few noble people in every generation of human history; some of these have been believers. These noble people have given encouragement and hope to the rest of the world. Many times these noble individuals have even been killed by the ones they ruled over. Which just goes to show that the common everyday person can't tell who is really noble. But you, as a believer in Jesus Christ, should wake up and get with the Lord's program, which is the learning and application of Bible doctrine. You must know and understand that billions of years ago the key to human history was planned, and it wasn't a democracy, which is the worst form of government, and it wasn't anyone who will be running for office. It was the Lord Jesus Christ.
15. So the key to human history came first, then came the creation of time, space, energy, matter, all the universes, the heavens and the earth, all the ages and dispensations. Every age or dispensation (except the last one) was designed in its own way to give man the full expression of his spiritual freedom. In giving him full expression of his freedom God is demonstrating that man has no appreciation of his freedom, and the best thing he can do with his freedom is to believe in Jesus Christ. Then after believing he should use his freedom to learn Bible doctrine on a consistent basis. That is the best that man can do in any period of human history. Man cannot stop wars, man cannot stop crime and violence and man cannot make the world a better place to live, only Jesus Christ can do that. To think otherwise is not only blasphemy, but arrogance



Timeline of Endtime Events

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 1: "In many parts (of the Old Testament) and in many different ways in the past, God spoke to our forefathers by means of the prophets."

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 2: "In these last days (of the Jewish Age, which ran concurrently with the Church Age for 40 years) He has spoken to us (with finality) in His unique Son whom He has appointed the Heir of all things and through whom He has designed the ages (dispensations)."

The concept of God giving His Son and appointing Him the heir of all things is described beautifully in the story of Abraham and Isaac, when God instructed Abraham to offer his son on the altar at Mount Moriah.

Genesis 22:1-14; (NIV)

- Vs 1: **Some time later God tested Abraham. He said to him, "Abraham!" "Here I am," he replied.**
- Vs 2: **Then God said, "Take your son, your only son, Isaac, whom you love, and go to the region of Moriah. Sacrifice him there as a burnt offering on one of the mountains I will tell you about."**
- Vs 3: **Early the next morning Abraham got up and saddled his donkey. He took with him two of his servants and his son Isaac. When he had cut enough wood for the burnt offering, he set out for the place God had told him about.**
- Vs 4: **On the the third day Abraham looked up and saw the place in the distance.**
- Vs 5: **He said to his servants, "Stay here with the donkey while I and the boy go over there. We will worship and then we will come back to you."**
- Vs 6: **Abraham took the wood for the burnt offering and placed it on his son Isaac, and he himself carried the fire and the knife. As the two of them went on together,**
- Vs 7: **Isaac spoke up and said to his father Abraham, "Father?" "Yes, my son?" Abraham replied. "The fire and the wood are here," Isaac said, "But where is the lamb for the burnt offering?"**
- Vs 8: **Abraham answered, "God himself will provide the lamb for the burnt offering, my son." And the two of them went on together.**

- Vs 9: **When they reached the place God had told him about, Abraham built an altar there and arranged the wood on it. He bound his son Isaac and laid him on the altar, on top of the wood.**
- Vs 10: **Then he reached out his hand and took the knife to slay his son.**
- Vs 11: **But the angel of the Lord called out to him from heaven, “Abraham! Abraham!” “Here I am,” he replied.**
- Vs 12: **“Do not lay a hand on the boy, “he said. “Do not do anything to him. Now I know that you fear God, because you have not withheld from me your son, your only son.”**
- Vs 13: **Abraham looked up and there in a thicket he saw a ram caught by its horns. He went over and took the ram and sacrificed it as a burnt offering instead of his son.**
- Vs 14: **So Abraham called the place The Lord will Provide (The Hebrew is יְהוָה יִרְאֶה –Jehovah-Jireh). And to this day it is said, “On the mountain of the Lord it will be provided.”**

On the same mountain but in a different area God provided the final sacrificial lamb. It was His own Son, Jesus Christ. The city of Jerusalem was actually built around Mount Moriah. The mountain where Abraham offered Isaac is the same mountain where Jesus Christ was crucified. The Jewish temple was also constructed on Mount Moriah. Today the Mosque of Omar is located on that site.

Hebrews 1:3; (KJV)

Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high; (KJV)

Who - ὅς – HO. Relative pronoun referring to Jesus Christ.

Being - ὢν – HON Present active participle nominative masculine singular of εἶμι – EIMI. This is the verb of absolute state of being. It means “always being.” There never was a time He wasn’t and He always will be. PRESENT TENSE speaks of continuous action in present time. The verb EIMI is usually found in the present tense because it speaks of an absolute state of being.

ACTIVE VOICE, the subject produces the action of the verb. Jesus Christ produced the action of “**being**” the brightness of his glory.”

PARTICIPLE: (ascriptive), which ascribes a quality, a fact, or a characteristic to the noun it modifies.

The brightness - ἀπαύγασμα – APAUGASMA. This is a compound noun. The prefixed preposition ἀπό – APO meaning “from” referring to ultimate source. Then the verb αὐγάζω – AUGAZO meaning “to view in the clearest light, to see distinctly.” In the compound form APAUGAZMA means “radiance, shining forth, brilliance, effulgence.” Effulgence, means “a light ray from an original light body.” This is probably the best translation of this word, but for most people this word wouldn’t mean a thing unless they had an extensive vocabulary. So I have chosen the word “radiance,” a word that most people could probably understand.

Literally, “Who being the radiance or shining forth.”

Of his glory - τῆς δόξης – TES DOXES. First of all there is a definite article which is used as a possessive pronoun τῆς – TES. Next we have the genitive singular of the noun δόξα – DOXA. Means “glory, praise, honor and majesty.”

God not only appointed Jesus Christ the Heir of all things, but when He appointed Him Heir He gave to Him all the glory that goes with it. Jesus Christ is the God-Man. In His deity He has glory through divine essence, and in His humanity He was given glory through the resurrection, ascension and session.

This is not only a glory that simply belongs to Him, because all glory belongs to Him. He is the “flashing forth” of that glory. The Greek word DOXA is often used for the essence of God, as it is in Romans 3:23 which says, “**For all have sinned and fall short of the GLORY of God.....**” (NIV) Emphasis added by the author) The essence of God is in view in our passage.

Jesus Christ is the “Radiance, the shining forth, the flashing forth of God’s glory.” No one can see God, no one ever will. The only radiance that reaches us from God is mediated to us from Jesus Christ. We would never be able to see or enjoy God’s light if we did not have Jesus Christ to look at. Standing before the temple one day Jesus said, **.....I AM THE LIGHT of the world. Whoever follows ME will never walk in darkness, but will have the LIGHT of life.** (NIV John 8:12; emphasis added by the author). We live in a dark world. There is the darkness of injustice, privation, disease, racism, death, violence and much more. But into this world God sent His glorious Light. Without the Son of God there is only darkness.

The great tragedy is that most people do not want to see God’s light, let alone accept it and live in it. Paul said in II Corinthians 4:4, “**The god of this age has blinded the minds of unbelievers, so that they cannot see the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God.....**” (NIV) God sent His light in the Person of Jesus Christ so that individuals might behold, accept and then radiate that light. But Satan moves through this world to blind the minds of people and prevent the light of the glorious gospel from shining on them.

Doctrine of Light

1. The literal use of light in the Bible is for the purpose of reminding man that his existence depends on light. Genesis 1:3, **And God said, “Let there be light,” and there was light.** Light is very necessary for any life to survive on planet earth. Human life cannot survive without light. Ecclesiastes 11:7, **Light is sweet, and it pleases the eyes to see the sun.** (NIV) Jeremiah 31:35, **This is what the Lord says, he who appoints the sun to shine by day, who decrees the moon and stars to shine by night.....** (NIV) Science has discovered that even in the darkest darkness there is some light, even though the human eye cannot detect it. But based on that discovery man has designed specialized night vision goggles whereby he can see clearly at night. These night vision goggles are designed to take whatever light is available and magnify it many times over, thereby giving the viewer a clear picture of things even in the darkness. This night vision equipment is called “starlight.” It was first used in the Vietnam War.

This “starlight” equipment, used by the military for night operations, takes whatever light that is detected in the darkness and magnifies it so that the user can observe the enemy in the darkness without the enemy knowing he is being observed. So this little piece of modern equipment helps the soldier see the enemy at night. It protects him from surprise attacks at night and helps him to see and understand what the enemy is up to in the dark.

By analogy, it is important to know that we live in a world of spiritual darkness because of Satanic thinking that is so prevalent throughout the world. The Bible is the absolute Word of God. It is our light, it is our “starlight” equipment in the spiritual realm. It gives us the ability to see in the spiritual darkness all around us. We can observe the enemy, and we can be alerted to dangers around us in the spiritual realm. Even though the Christian has been armed with this fantastic piece of equipment, most Christians do not use it. Then they are surprised when something happens to them. They possess the provision of God which allows them to see with their spiritual eyes the evil around them, and then continually to be ready for whatever comes.

Many times when the “starlight” equipment was used in combat, movement in the enemy camp was detected, but no one was sure exactly what was coming. So when something happened the defenders were not surprised. They may have been surprised by the numbers of the enemy or the weapons they were using, but the defenders were ready for the attack because of the information obtained from the “starlight” equipment.

The same is true in the spiritual life. We may be surprised as to the type of pressure and the type of suffering we are hit with, but if we study the Word of God consistently we should know that pressure and suffering are a part of the Christian life.

Therefore I challenge you to use your “spiritual starlight” equipment, which is the Word of God.

2. Light is used to illustrate the essence of God. I John 1:5, **This is the message we have heard from him and declare to you: God is LIGHT; in him there is no darkness at all.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

I Timothy 6:15b-16,**God, the blessed and only Ruler, the King of kings and Lord of lords, (16) who alone is immortal and who lives in unapproachable light, whom no one has seen or can see. To him be honor and might forever. Amen.** (NIV)

3. Jesus Christ as the manifest person of the Godhead is called light.
John 8:12, Jesus said, **.....I am the LIGHT of the world. Whoever follows me will never walk in darkness, but will have the LIGHT of life.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

4. The Gospel is called light because it deals with Christ.
II Corinthians 4:3-4, **And even if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled to those who are perishing. (4) The god of this age has blinded the minds of unbelievers, so that they cannot see the LIGHT OF THE GOSPEL OF THE GLORY OF CHRIST, who is the image of God.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

II Timothy 1:10, **but it has now been revealed through the appearing of our Savior, Christ Jesus, who has destroyed death and has brought life and immortality to LIGHT THROUGH THE GOSPEL.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

5. Being saved brings the individual out of darkness into light.
Luke 1:77-79, **.....to give the knowledge of salvation to his people in the putting away of their sins through the merciful compassions of our God, in the sphere of which compassions the Light rising in the east from on high shall come to look upon us and render us help, to bring light to those who sit in darkness and in the shadow of death, to direct our feet into the road of peace.** (The New Testament, an Expanded Translation by Kenneth S. Wuest, Moody Bible Institute, 1956)

I Peter 2:9, **But you are a chosen people, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people belonging to God, that you may declare the praises of him who called you out of darkness into his wonderful light.** (NIV)

6. Light is used to portray Bible doctrine in the soul.
Psalm 119:105, **Your word is a lamp to my feet and a LIGHT for my path.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Psalm 119:130, **The unfolding of your words gives LIGHT; it gives understanding to the simple.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

7. Spiritual maturity is developed or constructed in the soul by means of Bible doctrine, or light.
Psalm 43:3, **Send forth your LIGHT (Bible doctrine) and your TRUTH (Bible doctrine), let them guide me; let them bring me to your holy mountain (to spiritual maturity, edification of the soul), to the place where you dwell.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Psalm 119:130, **The unfolding of your words** (Bible doctrine) **gives LIGHT** (edification, spiritual growth); **it gives understanding to the simple.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Romans 13:12, **The night is nearly over; the day is almost here. So let us put aside the deeds of darkness and put on the armor of light.** (NIV) The armor of light refers to edification of the soul and spiritual maturity.

Ephesians 5:8, **For you were once darkness, but now you are light in the Lord. Live as children of light** (NIV) "Light in the Lord" refers to Bible doctrine in the soul.

8. Light depicts the believer's approach to spiritual maturity.
 II Corinthians 4:6, **For God, who said, "Let light shine out of darkness," made his light shine in your hearts** (thinking) **to give us the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the face of Christ.** (NIV)

Ephesians 5:8, **For you were once darkness, but now you are light in the Lord. Live as children of light.** (NIV)

9. Light is used for divine guidance of Israel by night.
 Exodus 14:19-20, **Then the angel of God** (Jesus Christ), **who had been traveling in front of Israel's army, withdrew and went behind them. The pillar of cloud also moved from in front and stood behind them, (20) coming between the armies of Egypt and Israel. Throughout the night the cloud brought darkness to the one side and light to the other side; so neither went near the other all night long.** (NIV)

When God the Father appointed Jesus Christ the Heir of all things, the divine glory that existed in Jesus Christ as God, and the glory that would be in His humanity would exist together in one person. That is one reason why Jesus Christ is unique.

Literally, "Who being the radiance, or shining forth of the glory."

SUMMARY PRINCIPLES

1. God the Father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit all have the same glory because they all have the same essence. However, when God the Father appointed God the Son, Jesus Christ, to be the Heir, He would become man, and there is no true glory in man. Man lost it in the

garden of Eden, and the old sin nature and spiritual death destroyed the glory of man. So man does not have true glory. But he does have a pseudo glory, a glory that God cannot recognize nor accept.

2. But Jesus Christ came into the world through the virgin birth without receiving a sinful nature and without the imputation of Adam's sin, and He lived without any personal sin. The devil threw every type of glory at Him including the rulership of the world, but to no avail. There is a certain type of glory in the rulership of the world, but it is absolutely worthless when compared to the glory that comes through the Father's plan. That glory from the Father is that which comes through grace.
3. Since the resurrection, ascension and session the man, Christ Jesus, is seated at the right hand of the Father, the place of glory and honor, and He now has the only true glory in all the human race. As the first chapter of Hebrews develops we will see that this glory is not just human glory. This glory which Jesus Christ now possesses as a man is greater than the glory of any angel, and angels are made out of glory. They are made of light. There is a consensus among Bible teachers that angelic bodies are constructed of light.

Throughout the Scriptures the angels are said to sing. Angels make music, which has caused many to think that they have harps and other musical instruments. But that is not so. All an angel has to do to make music is to polarize his body and he makes music. That is a part of his existence. Polarized light makes music. Light makes sounds. Therefore, angels have a fantastic glory of their own created by God. But the glory that Jesus Christ possesses is the same glory that God possesses, and as the God-Man He has a double glory and both of these are "flashing forth," "are shining" and "are radiant."

4. The word "effulgence" not only means "radiance," or "the seeing of this glory," but it means something else. It means that at the very beginning of this book of Hebrews we are challenged to see "the glory," or "the flashing forth" of the glory of Jesus Christ. Not just as God, but as man as well.
5. The only place where this glory is seen today is through the content of the Word of God. It will not be observed visibly until the Second Advent of Jesus Christ.

6. God the Father made it very clear that Jesus Christ was appointed the Heir of all things. Jesus Christ understood this completely. John the Baptist said in John 1:18, **No man has ever seen God at any time; the only unique Son, the only-begotten God, Who is in the bosom [that is, in the intimate presence] of the Father, He has declared Him—He has revealed Him.....and He has made Him known.** (Amplified Bible). Jesus Christ possesses double glory: the glory of God and the glory of man. Jesus possessed glory in His humanity because He was born without a sinful nature, but in His resurrection He received a special divine glory. He is the manifestation of God through His human glory, a glory that is greater than that of the angels. He is also the manifestation of God by His divine glory. The plan of God, the wisdom of God and the grace of God are all seen in Jesus Christ.

Literally, “Who being the radiance or shining forth of the glory.”

“The radiance or shining forth of the glory” actually emphasizes the glory of the humanity of Jesus Christ. But the next word emphasizes the glory of His deity.

And the express image of his person - καὶ χαρακτήρ τῆς ὑποστάσεως αὐτοῦ - KAI CHARASTER HUPOSTASEOS AUTOU.

Express image - χαρακτήρ - CHARAKTER. Nominative masculine singular of the noun χαρακτήρ - CHARAKTER. This is where we get the English word “character.” The Greek word CHARAKTER was used originally for an engraving tool, a die, a stamp, a mark, or an impression made with an engraving tool. Jesus Christ is the reproduction of God’s glory. He is the perfect, personal imprint of God in time and space.

Col 1:15 gives us a similar illustration of this fantastic truth. The NIV translates it this way, **“He is the image of the invisible God.”** The word translated **“image”** is the nominative masculine singular of the noun εἰκών - EIKON, from which we get our English word “icon.” EIKON means “a precise copy, an exact reproduction,” as in a fine sculpture or portrait. To call Jesus Christ the EIKON of God means that He is the exact reproduction of God.

Col 2:9 says, **For in Christ all the fullness of the Deity lives in bodily form.** (NIV).

Jesus Christ is also the engraving tool that makes an impression on sinful people. He is the only One who can. This is one reason why He is the key to history. Even though the devil rules the world, and the world is filled with many inequalities, violence, war, starvation and suffering of all kinds, Jesus

Christ, through the ministry of the Holy Spirit and the Word of God, makes impressions on all types of individuals throughout the entire world. There are many people in the devil's kingdom who have been engraved with the very glory of Jesus Christ in the ministry of the Holy Spirit and Bible doctrine.

Therefore, Jesus Christ can make an impact on history even though the devil rules the world. The devil's kingdom is a kingdom of darkness, and the only true light in this darkness is in the person of Jesus Christ and the thinking of Jesus Christ which is Bible doctrine.

The phrase “**express image**” is literally, “The exact image.”

Of his person - ὑποστάσεως – HUPOSTASEOS. Genitive feminine singular of the noun ὑπόστασις – HUPOSTASIS. This word means “substance or essence.” HUPO means “under.” STASIS means “to stand.” HUPOSTASIS literally means “standing under.” This is where we get the words “hypostatic union.” The humanity of Jesus Christ “stands under” the deity of Christ. Jesus Christ is unique. He is the God-Man.

Literally, “Who being the radiance or shining forth of the glory and the exact image of His essence.”

And upholding all things by the word of his power - Jesus Christ is the One who keeps all the physical laws stable. He is the One who keeps the earth spinning at just the right speed so it won't leave its orbit and spin off into the sun. Jesus Christ is the One who controls everything in nature. He holds everything together, from the smallest atom to the entire realm of galaxies and solar systems. Many people are concerned about certain animals becoming extinct. Technically, there is no such thing as an extinct species of animal because, during the Millennial Kingdom of Jesus Christ (the last 1000 years of history), the earth will be replenished with all forms of animal life as it was in the beginning.

Upholding - φέρων – PHERON. Present active participle nominative masculine singular of the verb φέρω – PHERO. Means “to bear, to carry, to maintain, to sustain.”

PRESENT TENSE linear aktionsart, is continuous action is present time. It means that He does this all the time.

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject produces the action of the verb. Jesus Christ produces the action of constantly sustaining everything. When Christ was a baby in the manger He held everything together. When He was on the cross He held everything together. When His body was in the tomb, in His deity He held everything together. He is holding everything together right now as He

is seated at the right hand of the Father. So Jesus Christ is the One who actively holds the universe together and that's not all, He is actually the creator of the universe. Col 1:16, **For by him (Jesus Christ) all things were created: things in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or powers or rulers or authorities; all things were created by him and for him.** (NIV)

Hebrews 1:10; **.....in the beginning, O Lord (Jesus Christ), you laid the foundations of the earth, and the heavens are the work of your hands.** (NIV) But in our passage we see Him as the sustainer of the universe.

PARTICIPIE (circumstantial) denoting the attendant circumstances involved in completing the action of the verb. The attendant circumstances include all of the aspects of Jesus Christ being the God-Man, and possessing all power as God to sustain all that He has created.

Jesus Christ sustains the entire universe with its billions and billions of light years of space and everything moving around in their designated areas without any traffic jams and without any accidents. So Jesus Christ not only made all things and will someday inherit all things, but He holds everything together in the meantime. Everything that exists is sustained right now by Jesus Christ.

We base our entire lives on the continuance and the consistency of physical laws. When something like an earthquake comes along and disrupts the normal conditions or operation of things even a little, the consequences are disastrous. Can you image what would happen if Jesus Christ relinquished His sustaining power over the physical laws? We would go out of existence. If He suspended the law of gravity only for a moment we would all perish in unimaginable ways. Even if the physical laws varied we would have an unbelievable mess. We could not exist. What we ate could turn to poison instead of nourishment. If the law of gravity changed, we could not stay on the earth, we would drift out into space. We would get flooded by the oceans periodically. Countless other horrible things would happen, many of which we can only guess.

Consider for example, what instant destruction would occur if the earth's rotation slowed down just a little. It would upset the balance of distance between planets and the sun. The sun has a surface temperature of 12,000 degrees Fahrenheit. If the earth were any closer to it we would burn up, if it were farther away we would freeze. If the moon did not retain its exact distance from the earth the ocean tides would overwhelm the land completely twice a day. If the ocean floors were merely a few feet deeper than they are, the carbon dioxide and oxygen balance of the earth's

atmosphere would be completely upset, and no animal or plant life could exist.

How does the universe stay in its fantastically delicate balance? Jesus Christ sustains and monitors all its movement and interworkings. Christ is the preeminent power that maintains it all.

Scientists who discover great and amazing truths are doing nothing but discovering a few of the laws that Jesus Christ established and uses to control the physical world. No scientist, mathematician, astronomer or nuclear physicist could do anything without the sustaining power of Jesus Christ. The whole universe hangs in the power of Jesus Christ. It is His unsearchable wisdom and boundless power that is manifested in governing the universe. And He does it **“by the word of his power.”** (Heb 1:3; KJV)

Therefore, according to our passage we know that the Lord upholds, sustains and preserves the earth, our solar system and every other solar system and galaxy in all of His creation. But the Lord’s sustaining and preserving power is not limited to all the galaxies.

Psalm 3:5, **I lie down and sleep; I wake again, because the Lord SUSTAINS me.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Psalm 31:23, **Love the Lord, all his saints! The Lord PRESERVES the faithful, but the proud he pays back in full.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Psalm 37:17, **....for the power of the wicked will be broken, but the Lord UPHOLDS** (preserves, sustains) **the righteous.** The righteous are the ones who have placed their faith in Jesus Christ. (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Psalm 37:24, **....though he stumble, he will not fall, for the Lord UPHOLDS** (preserves, sustains) **him with his hand.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Psalm 63:8, **My soul clings to you; your right hand UPHOLDS me.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Proverbs 13:6, **Righteousness guards the man of integrity, but wickedness overthrows the sinner.** (NIV)

Proverbs 16:17, **The highway of the upright avoids evil; he who guards his way guards his life.** (NIV)

Therefore, the Lord not only sustains and preserves all the galaxies and worlds He has created, but He also sustains and preserves the souls of every believer. In other words, the Lord's sustaining and preserving power is extended to all His creation. This includes unbelievers who also receive the benefits of God's grace every day; such as the air they breathe and the food that they eat.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION: "In many parts (of the Old Testament), and in many different ways in the past, God spoke to our forefathers by means of the prophets. (vs 2) In these last days (of the Jewish Age) He has spoken to us (with finality) in His unique Son whom He has appointed the Heir of all things and through whom He designed the ages (dispensations). (Vs 3) Who being the radiance or shining forth of the glory and the exact image of His essence."

This last phrase gives us one of the clearest presentations of the deity of Jesus Christ and the triune nature of God. What you should get from this phrase is that Jesus Christ is not just like a mirror reflection of what God is like. Jesus Christ is not just a reflection of the glory of God—He is God! This phrase teaches us that all of the glory of the Father is and always will be the exact glory of the Son.

Do you want to see the holiness of God the Father? Then see the holiness of God the Son. Do you want to see the perfect righteousness of God the Father? Then see the perfect righteousness of God the Son. Do you want to see the perfect justice of God the Father? Then see the perfect justice of God the Son. Do you want to see the grace, mercy, longsuffering and goodness of God the Father? Then see them in God the Son. He does not simply reflect the Father's glory, but He possesses exactly the same glory. And the only way you can ever see any of these things in Jesus Christ is to know and understand Bible doctrine. Because that is the only way they are revealed today.

Many people struggle with these concepts, and even when you know and understand Bible doctrine it can be very difficult to grasp. The things you don't completely understand, you must accept by faith. The Word of God says it; therefore, I believe it.

Jesus Christ possesses the same substance or essence of God the Father. God does have substance or essence. In fact, if there is no substance or essence there is no life, there is no true existence. You cannot have life without substance or essence.

You and I possess substance or essence, angels possess substance or essence, animals possess substance or essence, but all these substances are different. Human substance is visible, you can see me and I can see you, because man's substance is corporeal (a corpus, a physical body). God's substance is incorporeal, He does not possess human form. He does not have hands or arms or legs or a head. He is bodiless, and He is invisible. While man is physical and visible, God is spirit. In addition, man is mortal, God is immortal. Man is corruptible, God is incorruptible. The only exception to this is the incarnation, when Jesus Christ, the Second person of the Trinity, took on human form. As the God-Man Jesus Christ is both eternal God and true humanity, possessing the substance of both.

Just because you cannot see God's substance or because you cannot touch God's substance does not mean that God does not have substance. He does, but His substance is not physical and not visible to humans. His substance is a substance of a different kind. It is spiritual in a spirit world. For you or anyone to interact with the substance of God you can only do so in the realm of the spirit, and that requires three things:

1. You must be born-again: You must have faith in Jesus Christ and be born of the Spirit before you can ever have any hope of interacting with the spirit world of God.
2. You must be filled or controlled by the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit is the one who can guide you in your interaction with God. But He must control you before He can do that, and that requires you to acknowledge or name your sins on a regular basis.
3. You must have some knowledge of Bible doctrine. The more Bible doctrine you possess, the more you will be able to interact with God in the spirit world.

Before Jesus Christ took on human form, before He took on a physical body, before He took on human substance, He possessed all that the Father possessed.

Theologians trying to define the Trinity of God have said, "That within the unity of the Godhead, in the Oneness of the Godhead there are three persons: Father, Son and Holy Spirit. These three persons are co-eternal, these three persons are co-equal, these three persons are the same in substance or essence, though they are different and distinct in subsistence, or existence. In other words, the three persons of the Trinity are the same, are equal in essence, yet different in their functions.

When Jesus Christ went into the Jordan River and was baptized there was the voice of the Father that came out of heaven saying, “**This is my beloved Son,**” (KJV) and the Spirit of God descended upon Him as a dove. The Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit are all distinct but all have the same substance or essence.

In Phil 2:5-6, “Paul said, **Let this mind be in you which was in Christ Jesus, WHO BEING IN THE FORM OF GOD.....** (KJV) (Emphasis added by the author) This was before the incarnation, before the virgin birth, before He took on flesh. Literally, “Who being in the substance of God,” or “Who being in the essence of God.”

All of the glory of the Father is also all the glory of the Son. If you want to know and understand the invisible God, then you must know and understand the visible Son. You can only know Him from the pages of Scripture, and you can only understand the Bible when the Holy Spirit teaches you. However, He will only teach you when you are controlled by Him.

Verse 3 Literally says, “Who being the radiance or shining forth of the glory and the exact image of His essence and maintaining (sustaining) all things.”

By the word of his power - τῷ ῥήματι τῆς δυνάμεως αὐτοῦ – TO RAMATI TES DUNAMEOS AUTOU.

Question: What is more important to an individual, what he thinks or what he says? The answer, What he thinks! Because Bible doctrine is what Christ thinks (I Cor 1:16), but the way the universe runs is what He says.

Question: What is more important, the way the universe runs or Bible doctrine? The answer is Bible doctrine! It is easy for the Lord to keep the universe running, but to get into your soul with something meaningful in the devil's world is the challenge. Because the Lord cannot do anything for anyone without their permission. With all the power the Lord has to create and to maintain that which He has created, He cannot save one soul without that soul wanting to be saved and accepting the plan that God has designed.

The next time you get a chance to look at the stars, just remember that there are more stars than you can ever count. In fact, there are more stars than you can ever see. There are millions of gigantic bodies moving around in space at rapid rates of speed. So when you see all of that just remember that Jesus Christ speaks and that holds everything in place. But what He thinks is more important than what He speaks. And we have what He thinks as well as what He speaks. We have both. We live in a universe that is

sustained by the “**word of his power**,” but in our souls we can have what He thinks, Bible doctrine, if and when we learn it.

By the word - τῷ ῥήματι – TO REMATI. Dative instrumental case of the noun ῥῆμα – REMA. Means “the word that goes out, the word that is spoken.” Some have asked, “Why wasn’t λόγος – LOGOS used here instead of REMA?” LOGOS deals mainly with thinking, while REMA deals mainly with speaking. REMA could also be translated by the word “expression.”

This sustaining of the universe, this maintaining of its coherence in all of its parts, the Son accomplishes “**By the word of his power**.” The universe was called into existence by the “**Word of God**” (Heb 11:3), and is sustained by that same “**word**.” God willed it. His power brought into being that which He willed. But the creation and the maintaining of that creation is one of the easiest things for the Lord. However, the plan of salvation, whereby sinful, depraved and rebellious man can be made righteous in the sight of God took a great sacrifice on the part of the Lord.

Literally, “Sustaining all things by the verbal expression of His power.”

Power - τῆς δυνάμεως – TES DUNAMEOS. Genitive singular of δύναμις – DUNAMIS. Means “inherent power.” This refers to omnipotence, one of the characteristics of deity. Omnipotence comes from two Latin words: OMNI meaning “all,” and POTENT meaning “powerful.”

Summary Concepts

1. When God the Father appointed Jesus Christ the Heir of all things, He did a very interesting and humorous thing. He also assigned to Jesus Christ, not only the creation of the universe, but the sustaining of it. With all of the gigantic galaxies around our universe ours is one of the smallest. Our universe is in the Milky Way Galaxy, and in our little universe we are on one little planet called the earth. Jesus Christ could cause our little planet to run into the sun, or run into Mars or some other planet, or the moon. He could destroy this earth in less than a second. It would be very easy for the Lord to destroy this earth. In fact, He will do so in the future after all judgments are past.
2. This little planet called earth is the devil’s kingdom, and to the devil it is a big kingdom. But it is a little piece of nothing when compared to the entire realm of systems, galaxies and universes. God has a fantastic sense of humor.

3. There is something else you should keep in mind. Satan's little kingdom here on planet earth is so dull that he actually spends very little time here. I know that this may be a shock to those who think that the devil is after them. But the devil is in heaven right now accusing the members of the family of God who are a threat to him. Satan spends most of his time in heaven doing this. Rev 12:10, **Then I heard a loud voice in heaven say: "Now have come the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God, and the authority of his Christ. For the accuser of our brothers, who accuses them before our God day and night, has been hurled down."** (NIV) The word "**accuse**" found in the last sentence of this verse is the present active participle of κατηγορέω – KATEGOREO meaning "to accuse, to speak against, to reproach." The present tense tells us that Satan is constantly in heaven "accusing and speaking against" God's people.

Satan only comes to the earth on special occasions, like the testing of Job, or the testings of Jesus, or the testings of the Apostle Paul. But other than that he is usually in heaven. And if you think that the devil is personally after you, then you are either the greatest Christian since the Apostle Paul, or you are the most arrogant person alive. The devil is usually not personally after anyone today.

4. It seems that the devil can't stand to spend all of his time on the earth. That is one reason why he would like to give it to someone else. But only to someone whom he could control. He offered it to our Lord Jesus Christ, who refused. In the future, he will offer it to the antichrist, the dictator of the Revived Roman Empire, who will accept.

When the devil is finally thrown out of heaven for good (Rev 12:7-10), and is forced to spend three and half years on the earth, he actually goes crazy. Rev 12:13b says, **.....he pursued the woman who had given birth to the male child.** (NIV) The word "**pursued**" is the aorist active indicative of the verb διώκω – DIOKO meaning "to pursue or persecute eagerly." Some theologians call this "the devil's desperation." In other words, he goes crazy after his humiliating expulsion from heaven at the hands of Michael the archangel. The woman spoken of in Rev 12:13 refers to Israel, and the child refers to the humanity of Jesus Christ. In other words, the devil will "eagerly pursue" Israel in an attempt to destroy her. Satan has pursued Israel since God chose her, and he will continue to pursue her until God throws him into the lake of fire. Most people really have no idea regarding these things because they do not study the Word of God.

5. Christians who attempt to make the world a better place to live through their activism, education, and political posturing are wasting their time. The world is not only one of the smallest of all the planets, but the Lord is going to destroy it in the future! Then He is going to create a new earth for the eternal state. So why do Christians work so hard on something that God is going to destroy? They work hard because they really don't understand the Word of God and the plan of God.

The Christian should always keep this in mind: the One who controls all of the galaxies and universes, and sustains the earth, also controls our souls. Even though everyone has free will, the Lord is in command of every soul regarding its safety and deliverance, even for the unbeliever, who is preserved and delivered for judgment at the great white throne. (II Peter 3:7; Jude 14-16;)

This fact drives the devil right up the wall; he can't stand it. It really bugs him that right in the middle of his kingdom there are those who are controlled by the Spirit of God.

PRINCIPLE: before you start spending your time on social issues or on politics, just remember this: your life has meaning and purpose with Bible doctrine, but without Bible doctrine your life means very little. Therefore, I encourage you to put Bible doctrine first in your scale of values.

6. The One who makes it possible for the devil's kingdom to spin around in space is Jesus Christ, and He does it with just His Word. He keeps the earth spinning and moving in its orbit so a few people will use their free will to smarten up and accept Jesus Christ as Savior and get with Bible doctrine. The only thing that really counts for the Christian is Bible doctrine in the soul. When you die the only thing you can take to heaven with you is the Bible doctrine you have learned in your life on planet earth. That is why we are called upon to study and to grow in the knowledge of our Lord (II Tim 2:15; II Peter 3:18)
7. Jesus Christ is more important than anything else in your entire life. But you will never know and understand that until you have the capacity to appreciate Him personally, and you will never have that capacity until you know and understand a lot of Bible doctrine.
8. If you can be occupied with the person who controls the universe and not with a person, or a group, or political party that is trying to clean

up this earth, then you are on the right track. You must realize that the devil is very embarrassed by many of the things that happen on this earth. Satan wants the earth to have peace, sweetness and light and brotherhood. Did you know that Satan is the author of the brotherhood of man? He has encouraged this idea since the fall of Adam in the garden of Eden.

Many times Satan has tried to get rid of people who oppose the brotherhood of man concept. The brotherhood of man is the policy that he uses to push his international agenda, and Christians should oppose that agenda every time they can. The Bible opposes anything that promotes internationalism, and the brotherhood of man promotes internationalism. (Acts 17:26; is where nationalism is emphasized)

9. For Christians who are involved in any form of activism, the very best they can do is to put a little dab of whitewash on the world where there ought to be glory. But the only glory that you and I can have is the reflected glory of Jesus Christ that can only be seen through our knowledge and application of Bible doctrine. This is the only glory that you and I can have legitimately. Maximum Bible doctrine in the soul reflects the glory of Jesus Christ in time.

Verse three literally says, "Who being the radiance or shining forth of the glory and the exact image of His essence, and maintaining all things by the verbal expression of His power."

The Bible, the Word of God, has a lot to say about itself. And most of the time the Bible will explain itself if we will only keep studying it. Just like a battery which has a positive and negative pole, the Bible has a positive and negative message.

THREE THINGS CONCERNING THE BIBLE

1. The Bible gives us a very strong positive message.
 Psalm 33:4, **For the word of God is right and true.....** (NIV)
 Psalm 33:6, **By the word of the Lord were the heavens made....** (NIV)
 Psalm 107:20, **He sent forth his word and healed them;....** (NIV)
 Psalm 119:50, **"My comfort in my suffering is this: Your promise (your word) preserves my life.** (NIV)
 Psalm 119:89 **Your word, O Lord, is eternal; it stands firm in the heavens.** (NIV)
 Psalm 119:105, **Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light for my path.** (NIV)

Psalm 119:116, **Sustain me according to your promise (word), and I will live...** (NIV)

Psalm 119:160, **All your words are true; all your righteous laws are eternal.** (NIV)

Proverbs 30:5, **Every word of God is flawless.....** (NIV)

Matthew 8:16, **.....he drove out the spirits with a word and healed all the sick.** (NIV)

Hebrews 4:12, **For the word of God is living and active.** (NIV)

II Peter 3:5, **.....by God's word the heavens existed and the earth was formed.....** (NIV)

2. The Bible also gives us a very strong negative message. In other words it is dangerous to ignore, neglect or willfully reject the teachings of the Bible.

Numbers 15:31, **Because he has despised the Lord's word and broken his commands, that person must surely be cut off; his guilt remains on him.** (NIV)

I Samuel 15:23, the Lord rejected Saul as king. **Because you have rejected the word of the Lord, he has rejected you as king.** (NIV)

I Chronicles 10:13-14, **Saul died because he was unfaithful to the Lord; he did not keep the word of the Lord and even consulted a medium for guidance, (14) and did not inquire of the Lord. So the Lord put him to death and turned the kingdom over to David son of Jesse.** (NIV)

Psalm 147:18, **He sends his word and melts them;.....** (NIV)

Jeremiah 8:9, **The wise will be put to shame; they will be dismayed and trapped. Since they have rejected the word of the Lord.....** (NIV)

Mk 7:13, **Thus you nullify the word of God by your tradition..** NIV

John 12:48, **.....for the one who rejects me and does not accept my words; that very word which I spoke will condemn him at the last day.** (NIV)

II Peter 3:7, **By the same word the present heavens and earth are reserved for fire, being kept for the day of judgment and destruction of ungodly men.** (NIV)

3. The Bible as the Word of God is referred to in a number of different ways throughout the Scriptures.

The Word (LOGOS) of God and the Word of Christ.....Acts 4:31;
Rom 10:17.

The Word (LOGOS) of the Lord (translated "message" in the NIV...
I Thess 1:8;

- The Word (LOGOS) of the Kingdom...**(translated “message” in the NIV).....Matt 13:19.
- The Word (REMA) of Jesus**.....Matthew 26:75.
- The Word (LOGOS) of Exhortation**.....(Translated “message” in the NIV in Acts)...Acts 13:15; Hebrews 13:22.
- The Word (LOGOS) of the Gospel**....(translated “message” in the NIV).....Acts 15:7.
- The Word (LOGOS) of his Grace**.....(translated “message” in the NIV).....Acts 14:3; Acts 20:24.
- The Word (LOGOS) of Promise**....(the NIV does not translate the word LOGOS but it is in the Greek text).....Rom 9:9.
- The Word (REMA) of Faith**.....Romans 10:8.
- The Word (LOGOS) of Wisdom**....(translated “message” in the NIV).....I Corinthians 12:8.
- The Word (LOGOS) of Knowledge**....(translated “message” in the NIV).....I Corinthians 12:8.
- The Word (LOGOS) of Reconciliation**...(translated “message” in the NIV)...II Corinthians 5:19.
- The Word (LOGOS) of Truth**....(translated “speech” in the NIV).....II Cor 6:7; Eph 1:13.
- The Word (LOGOS) of Life**.....Philippians 2:16; I John 1:1.
- The Word (LOGOS) of Christ**.....Colossians 3:16.
- The Word (REMA) of His Power**.....Hebrews 1:3.
- The Word (LOGOS) of Righteousness**..(translated “teaching” in the NIV)....Hebrews 5:13.
- The Word (LOGOS) of the Oath**.....Hebrews 7:28 (KJV).
- The Word (LOGOS) of Prophecy**.....II Peter 1:19 (KJV)
- The Word (LOGOS) of My Patience**...(translated “command” in the NIV).....Rev 3:10.

In the previous list of usages of the “**word**” I have noted the Greek word that is used in the original text. The two words that are used: λόγος – LOGOS and ῥῆμα – REMA have similar meanings, but there is a difference in their applications. LOGOS refers to any word that is used in speech or writing. But when it is used with reference to God or His message it refers to that which is absolute and perfect. It refers to the realm of absolute doctrine from the divine source. LOGOS is also used for Jesus Christ. In John 1:1-3 Jesus is called “**The Word of God**” (the Logos of God). This phrase is also found in Revelation 19:13. REMA has the same basic meaning as Logos; it is used for speaking and writing. But when it is used with reference to the Word of God it refers to that which goes out and accomplishes something. In the list given above REMA is found in Matt 26:75 for the “**Word of Jesus.**” This refers to the word our Lord spoke that

went out and accomplished that which He desired. In “**The word of faith**” in Rom 10:8, REMA is used to refer to the word spoken in faith, which accomplishes salvation. REMA is also used in Heb 1:3 for the “**word of His power**,” (KJV) which refers to His Word going forth and sustaining all things.

Literally, “Who being the radiance or shining forth of the glory and the exact image of His essence, and maintaining all things by the verbal expression of His power.”

When he had by himself purged our sins - καθαρισμὸν τῶν ἁμαρτιῶν ποιήσάμενος – KATHARISMON TON HAMARTON POIESAMENOS.

When - Not in the Greek text. It is actually a translation of the participle.

When he had by himself - ποιήσάμενος – POIESAMENOS. First Aorist middle participle nominative masculine singular of the verb ποιέω – POIEO. Means “To do, to accomplish.” Literally, “Having himself accomplished.” The word “**having**” indicates the participle. The word “**himself**” indicates the middle voice, and the word “**accomplished**” indicates the meaning of the verb POIEO in this phrase.

AORIST TENSE (constative), which views the action of the verb in its entirety. This tense takes all the points of time involved in the life of Jesus Christ as He came into history as a man and did something that was unique. Now the fact that Jesus Christ died on the cross was not unique. During the history of Rome more people were crucified than by any other type of capital punishment. Crucifixion was very common. After the Spartacus revolt (around 70 BC) the Romans crucified people by the thousands and placed their crosses up and down the roads going to Rome.

They also left the bodies on the crosses for months. You couldn’t travel on any major road going in or out of Rome without going by all those corpses rotting on the wood. That area of the empire had a very bad odor for months. Everyone got the warning that it didn’t pay to rebel against Rome. So the idea of crucifixion was not unique.

In our passage of Hebrews 1:3 the thing that is important to understand is that it was the One on the cross who was unique. He was the God-Man. And the amazing thing about His crucifixion was that Jesus Christ accomplished in three hours what man had been unable to accomplish for over six or seven thousand years. And what has man been unable to do? He has been trying throughout human history to come to God by his own deeds. Man is born spiritually dead, and from then on he demonstrates his spiritual death by sinning and by his actions and attitude toward the things of God. But Jesus Christ took the personal sins of every individual; past, present and future,

and was judged for them on the cross. These sins were all poured out on Jesus Christ and He was judged for all of them.

In Acts 17:30 it says, **In the past God overlooked such ignorance, but now he commands all people everywhere to repent.** (NIV) This means that He overlooked the judging of sin until the cross. In other words, God never charged any sin to anyone. Romans 4:8 tell us that **Blessed** (Greek word μακάριος – MAKARIOS meaning “happy or blessed”) **is the man whose sin the Lord will never count against him.** (NIV) God provided a system of sacrifices in the Old Testament that simply covered sin, but they never judged or forgave sin. God withheld the judgment of sin until Jesus went to the cross. By the Old Testament sacrifices no one was ever made clean from sin. The Old Testament sacrifices were a continual reminder of sin. Hebrews 10:4 reminds us, **it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins.** (NIV) John 1:29, quoting John the Baptist says, “.....**Look! the Lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world!**” (NIV) as he pointed to Jesus Christ. Then in Hebrews 10:10 & 14 we are told, **.....we have been made holy through the sacrifice of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.** (NIV) Then in verse 14 it says, **Because by one sacrifice he has made perfect** (perfect active indicative of the verb τελειόω – TELEIOO meaning “to finish, to complete,” referring to spiritual maturity) **forever those who are being made holy.** (NIV) Jesus completed an unalterable judicial judgment of all sin that gives the believer a position before God as being perfect and complete. But this can only be accomplished in the individual who places his faith and trust in the Lord Jesus Christ, depending on His work for his salvation.

John F. Strombeck, in his book “So Great Salvation,” provides a beautiful illustration. “Many years ago a newly married couple had invited members of their two families to a Sunday dinner. The guests were seated around the table. All desired to be at their best. As the rich brown gravy was being passed, one young lady accidentally tipped the bowl which resulted in a large brown spot on the immaculately clean linen tablecloth. The hostess quickly and skillfully scraped up the gravy and spread a napkin over the spot and the meal went on. The napkin did not take away the spot; it merely covered it so that the dinner could go on. To the unfortunate young woman who had spilled the gravy the white napkin was a constant reminder of her accident.” In the same manner, the Old Testament sacrifices covered the sins of the Israelites and were a constant reminder of sin. “The day after the dinner the tablecloth was washed and the spot was taken away.” The napkin was no longer needed to remind anyone of the spot because the spot had been washed away. In the same way by the sacrifice of Jesus Christ believers are washed clean from their sins and the sacrifices and rituals of the Old

Testament Law are no longer needed to remind us of sins. The Holy Spirit using the Word of God does a much better job than any law could ever do.

In the last three hours on the cross Jesus**himself bore our sins in his body on the tree** (I Peter 2:24 NIV). That's what was unique about the death of Jesus Christ. He bore the sins of the entire world in His own body. No human being had ever done that before. That was very different, and that was what made all the difference. It was God providing a perfect sacrifice for sin in His own Son, the Lord Jesus Christ.

In the plan of God Jesus Christ actually enters human history twice. Once to die on the cross and once to return and establish His perfect earthly kingdom. At the cross He did something unique, He died for the sins of the entire world, and at the Second Advent He will again do something unique, He will establish a perfect kingdom on the earth.

When Jesus Christ came into history the first time He came for only one purpose: to die. But a lot of people have a lot of false ideas about the first advent of Jesus. For instance, if Jesus Christ was who He said He was, then why didn't He establish universal freedom and abolish slavery? Why didn't He put an end to sickness and disease? Why didn't He put an end to war and crime? The list goes on and on as to what people think Jesus came to do, or should have done.

The Bible is very clear on this subject, and it tells us that He came for only one purpose. Jesus Christ came for the purpose of providing eternal life for mankind. What He did on the cross is greater than anything else man wanted Him to do. In fact, what Jesus Christ did on the cross is greater than His fantastic work of creation (John 1:3 and Col 1:15-16; informs us that Jesus Christ was the creator of all things). But man is very short-sighted and only wants solutions in the physical realm, the things he sees and feels. But Jesus Christ provided a solution for mankind that would carry man into eternity with great blessings and happiness, if he only would believe, have trust in what Jesus Christ provided.

In verse 3 we previously saw that the Greek word POIEO translated **Had by himself** in the King James Version was the aorist middle participle. The aorist tense of POIEO refers to that unique point of time when Jesus Christ went to the cross and provided our salvation. The middle voice is reflexive telling us that Jesus did this Himself. The action of the aorist participle precedes the action of the main verb. The main verb in this sentence is "**he sat down.**" In other words, after He did His work on the cross, after He accomplished this "**He sat down**" indicating that His work was done, it was completed. Nothing more could be added to it.

Literally, “Having Himself accomplished.”

Purged - καθαρισμὸν – KATHARISMOS. Accusative masculine singular of the noun καθαρισμός – KATHARISMOS. Means “to cleanse, to purify, to remove anything for the purpose of purification.” Other words that clarify the word “purge” are “destruction, elimination, defection, extermination, death and eject.”

Doctrine of Purging

1. DEFINITION: To purge means “To eliminate something for the purpose of purifying or cleansing.” “To destroy something for the purpose of purifying or cleansing.” “To exterminate or kill something or someone for the purpose of purifying or cleansing.”
2. Josiah the king of Judah purged the land of idols and images in order to cleanse and purify the land of idol worship. II Chronicles 34:3, **In the eighth year of his reign, while he was still young, he began to seek the God of his father David. In his twelfth year he began to purge** (Septuagint, the Greek Old Testament uses the aorist active infinitive of the verb καθαρίζω – KATHARIZO which is a form of the same word found in Heb 1:3) **Judah and Jerusalem of high places, Asherah poles, carved idols and cast images.** (NIV) In this passage the word “purge” refers to destroying and tearing down the false places of worship in order to cleanse and purify the land.
3. Many times God will purge a nation of people who have rejected the principles of divine establishment. Divine establishment includes the the principles of free will, marriage, family and nationalism. These things were designed by God for all nations. Ezekiel 20:38, **I will purge you of those who revolt and rebel against me.....** (NIV) (the word for purge in this passage, in the Septuagint is the perfect active participle of the verb ἀφίστημι – ASPHISTEMI meaning “to remove from, to separate from”).
4. During the Church Age there are many times when the Lord will purge (cleanse, purify, separate) from the congregation those who are negative to the teaching of the Word of God.) The ones He removes, by death or disease or some other means, are those individuals who are negative to Bible doctrine, those who refuse to be taught divine truth.

In the Corinthian Church there was a man who was living with his father’s wife (actually his stepmother) and was having sexual relations

with her. I Corinthians 5:1-5. The NIV reads, **It is actually reported that there is sexual immorality among you, and of a kind that does not occur even among pagans: A man has his father's wife. (2) And you are proud! Shouldn't you rather have been filled with grief and have put out of your fellowship the man who did this? (3) Even though I am not physically present, I am with you in spirit. And I have already passed judgment on the one who did this, just as if I were present. (4) When you are assembled in the name of our Lord Jesus and I am with you in spirit, and the power of our Lord is present, (5) hand this man over to Satan** (how does a church hand someone over to Satan? They do it first by expelling him from their membership and fellowship, and then praying that the sin of this man would not spread to other members of the congregation.), **so that the sinful nature may be destroyed and his spirit saved on the day of the Lord.** (NIV)

I Timothy 1:19-20, **..holding on to faith** (Bible doctrine) **and a good conscience. Some have rejected these and so have shipwrecked their faith** (In other words, they have destroyed the Bible doctrine that once resided in their souls). (20) **Among them are Hymenaeus and Alexander, whom I have handed over to Satan to be taught not to blaspheme.** (NIV)

Here is an example I think will help clarify the principle that is taught in the previous verses. In seminary one my most influential professors, Dr. John Hunter, told this story about his pastorate in the state of Georgia. His church was growing in numbers at a fantastic rate so they organized a building fund to pay for future expansion. The building fund was blessed greatly. The congregation was moved by the Holy Spirit to give abundantly so that the building fund actually accumulated more funds than necessary to build an addition to the church. When Dr. Hunter approached the board regarding the new construction he met with opposition by most of the board members. For over six months he debated and argued with them about the need to expand the church. The money was in the bank and they had the blueprints for the new structure, but for some reason they boldly refused to release the money.

Dr. Hunter, in recounting this story, told us that he informed the church board that he was going to start praying that God would either change their minds or take them out of the way because the ministry was ordained by God to grow. Within six months two board members were dead, and three were in the hospital with various physical problems. To make a long story short, Dr. Hunter's plan of honoring

the Lord was fulfilled. He believed that his prayers to the Lord were the defining factor in removing the men who were obstructing the work of the Lord in that church. This is an example of delivering negative and opposing believers to Satan for the destruction of the flesh in order that the plan of God could move on.

5. When the Lord Jesus Christ returns to this earth He will purge or eliminate all those who have not trusted Him as Savior. Matt 3:11b-12,**He will baptize you with..... fire** (this is a judging baptism. The word baptism means “identification;” therefore, Jesus is saying that they would be identified with fire or judgment. Then in the next verse He describes this baptism). (12) **His winnowing fork is in his hand, and he will clear** (future active indicative of the verb διακαθαρίζω – DIAKARTHARIZO. Means “to cleanse thoroughly, to purge.” The future tense tells us that this will occur at the Second Advent) **his threshing floor** (referring to the earth), **gathering his wheat** (believers in Jesus Christ only) **into the barn** (the Millennial Kingdom) **and burning up the chaff** (unbelievers, all who have not accepted Jesus Christ) **with unquenchable fire.** (NIV) This refers to the fires of torment in the center of the earth as described in Luke 16:23). When Jesus Christ returns to set up His kingdom, He will not allow anyone who is not a believer to enter.
6. We as believers must purge (eradicate, eliminate) the sins we commit. In other words, we must rebound, we must confess, acknowledge or name our sins in order to have them eliminated from our Christian lives. II Timothy 2:20-21, **In a large house there are articles not only of gold and silver, but also of wood and clay; some are for noble purposes and some for ignoble.** (21) **If a man cleanses** (aorist active subjunctive of the verb ἐκκαθαίρω – EKKATHRAIRO. Means “to clean out from, to purge out from.” This refers to rebound, or bouncing back into the filling of the Holy Spirit. This means to regain the filling of the Holy Spirit after the confession of sins) **himself from the latter, he will be an instrument for noble purposes, made holy, useful to the Master and prepared to do any good work.** (NIV)
7. When Jesus Christ went to the cross and died for the sins of the entire world, according to Heb 1:3, “He purged our sins, He eliminated our sins, He canceled our sins, He removed our sins.” Sins are no longer an issue in anyone’s salvation. Heb 1:3 expanded translation, “.....**having Himself purged** (eliminated) **sins.**” He removed our sins for the purpose of “cleansing and purifying our souls.”

8. Sins are not an issue for salvation. The only issue in salvation is **“believe in the Lord Jesus Christ and you will be saved”** (Acts 16:31). When the Christian stands before the Lord at the Judgment Seat of Christ, sins will not be mentioned because sins were removed (purged) by Jesus Christ. II Cor 5:10, **For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ, that each one may receive what is due him for the things done while in the body, whether good** (ἀγαθός – AGATHOS, referring to good of intrinsic value or a divine good) **or bad** (φραυλος – PHAULOS meaning “worthless,” referring human good). (NIV)

9. When the unbeliever stands before the Lord at the Great White Throne Judgment, he will also not be judged for any of his sins because Jesus Christ removed (purged) all sins on the cross. Revelation 20:11-15, **Then I saw a great white throne and him who was seated on it. Earth and sky fled from his presence, and there was no place for them. (12) And I saw the dead, great and small** (the important people and the unimportant people), **standing before the throne, and books were opened. Another book was opened, which is the book of life. The dead were judged according to what they had done** (according to their good deeds) **as recorded in the books. (13) The sea gave up the dead that were in it, and death and Hades gave up the dead that were in them, and each person was judged according to what he had done** (according to his good deeds). **(14) Then death and Hades were thrown into the lake of fire. The lake of fire is the second death. (15) If anyone’s name was not found written in the book of life, he was thrown into the lake of fire.** (NIV) (Emphasis and explanations provided by the author) There is absolutely nothing mentioned in this passage regarding sins. Why? Because Jesus Christ paid the judicial penalty for all sins of every human being both saved and unsaved.

Therefore, when the Son of God purged our sins He did so by Himself, acting upon Himself, offering Himself as the sacrifice for sin, and for Himself, acting in His own interest. The reflexive middle voice of this participle has given us more information than any one translation which is now available. The truth is that Jesus Christ accomplished this work by Himself, through Himself and for the benefit of Himself. Hebrews 9:26b gives us the same principle as Hebrews 1:3,**But now he has appeared once for all at the end of the ages to do away with sin by the SACRIFICE OF HIMSELF** (NIV) (Emphasis provided by the author)

Jesus Christ is the Creator, the Sustainer and the Motivating Force of all things from their beginning all the way down through the ages to come. It was and is His responsibility to see to it that everything in the plan of God is

brought to its final and ultimate conclusion. But sin came into existence through Satan and then man. This brought disarray to this perfect universe. In carrying out all things to their desired end the Son of God had to confront and deal with sin which had thrown everything into disorder and out of God's order.

So far Hebrews 1:3 literally says, "Who (referring to Jesus Christ) being the radiance or shining forth of the glory and the exact image of His (God the Father's) essence, and maintaining all things by the verbal expression of His (Christ's) power, having Himself accomplished the purging (eliminating) of our sins."

Our sins - History is actually the account of man and his old sin nature. Mankind continually demonstrates that he is spiritually dead by sinning personally. Spiritual death is based on the existence of the old sin nature in the body of every human being. Man, therefore, demonstrates his spiritual death by personally sinning. This also applies to believers in Jesus Christ. Even though the believer in Jesus Christ has been born again and has the Holy Spirit living in him, whenever he commits a sin he is immediately under the condemnation of temporal spiritual death. This means that the old sin nature rather than the Holy Spirit controls him. More will be said about this principle later in our study of Hebrews.

The biggest problems in human history are the sins of the old sin nature and the human good from the old sin nature. The sins were purged (judged) at the cross and human good was rejected at the cross. Most of us are familiar with the judgment of our sins on Jesus Christ on the cross, but most Christians are not familiar with our Lord's rejection of human good. Human good was rejected in the sense that Jesus in His perfect humanity could have solved all the world's problems without following the Father's plan. He could have stayed alive and healed everyone and provided food and shelter for all. Even though those were all good things, it was not a part of the Father's plan. All those good things would have been classified as human good. Therefore, our Lord rejected human good at the cross. At the cross we see the key to the solution of all the problems of humanity. Therefore, Jesus Christ is the key to history because He "**purged**" or eliminated our sins on the cross and He rejected human good.

Literally, "Having Himself accomplished the purging (eliminating) of our sins."

Our - Not in the Greek text. There is no pronoun here.

Sins - τῶν ἁμαρτιῶν – TON HAMARTION. First of all the Greek has a definite article which is untranslatable. Some Bible teachers like to use this

definite article for a personal pronoun, but that is not a correct application here. Next we have the genitive feminine plural of the noun ἁμαρτία – HAMARTIA. HAMARTIA means “a transgression of the law of God.” In our passage this refers to the sins of the entire human race under the doctrine of unlimited atonement.

Literally, “Having Himself accomplished the purging (eliminating) of sins.”

SUMMARY PRINCIPLES REGARDING SIN

1. Sin entered the human race when Adam broke the law of God and ate the forbidden fruit. Adam was held responsible because God placed him in authority over all things on the earth, even over his wife Eve. This account is given in Genesis 3:1-7; also in Romans 5:12, **Therefore, just as sin entered the world through one man (Adam), and death through sin (that is spiritual death), and in this way death came to all men, because all sinned - (NIV)** Man’s fall into sin was an act of arrogance, just as it was in the case of Lucifer (Satan). Lucifer desired to be like God, and God threw him out of the pre-historic government of God (Isaiah 14:12-14). The man and the woman in the Garden of Eden desired to be like God and God cursed them (Genesis 3:2-6).
2. When Adam and Eve took of the forbidden fruit they expressed the desire to be independent of God and to be dependent upon themselves. To feel that one can do without God, or even the absence of a feeling of the need of God and to live without taking God into consideration is a sin. This is true in all cases, whether a person is one of refinement and high moral standards or is unrefined and has low morals. The good conduct of an individual is not the determining factor. It is the attitude toward God that counts. Sin, then, is essentially a setting aside of God by His creatures and taking unto themselves His place.

To depend upon self and to refuse to depend upon God alone is to refuse to honor and glorify Him as God. As a result, man is glorified in himself and in his works. The very essence of sin, then, is independence of God and dependence upon self. All overt acts which are called sins are but the expression and evidence of an inner nature that is not dependent on God. We call that nature the old sin nature.
3. Romans 14:23b says in the NIV**everything that does not come from faith is sin.** Faith means trust and dependence upon

God. Therefore, all that is not dependent upon God is sin. According to this, even things that seem to be good might be sin. Many think only of crime and immorality as sin. That is not true. The strongest example of sin is not in the areas of crime and immorality, but in the areas of self-righteousness and arrogance. In the areas of crime and immorality there may be a greater sense of the need of God and a greater dependence upon Him.

The self-righteous and the arrogant feel no such need of God. They feel sufficient in themselves, and they depend upon themselves and are therefore far away from God even though they may be highly cultured, refined, moral and even religious. In Matthew 21:31 Jesus said to the chief priest and the elders of the Jews: **.....I tell you the truth, the tax collectors and the prostitutes are entering the kingdom of God ahead of you.** (NIV)

4. Adam was created in the image of God (Genesis 2:27). But when he sinned he lost that image and gained the image of a lost, depraved and spiritually dead individual. Adam was the only man to become a sinner by sinning. All others since Adam have been born sinners. When Adam was 130 years old he became the father of a son **in his own likeness and in his own image.....** (Genesis 5:3 NIV). As Adam was then a sinner, his son was born a sinner. Since that time everyone who has been born, except Jesus Christ, is born a sinner. Jesus Christ was not born a sinner because he did not have a human father. Therefore, the sinful nature was not transmitted to Him as it is in all other members of the human race. Every other human being has been born a sinner which means that all individuals are born spiritually dead.
5. When Adam sinned in the Garden, he not only yielded himself to Satan and came under his dominion, but he also broke God's law as expressed in the commandment not to eat of the fruit of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. The penalty for breaking the law of God was death: Genesis 2:17 says in the NIV, **.....you must not eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, for when you eat of it you will surely die.** That has always been the penalty for breaking God's law. Ezekiel 18:20 says in the NIV, **The soul that sins is the one who will die.....** The death that entered the human race by Adam's sin has passed upon all men so that all men are under the penalty of the broken law. Romans 5:12 from the NIV says, **Therefore, just as sin entered the world through one man, and death through sin, and in this way death came to all men, because all sinned.** They are all under the curse.

6. Because the penalty for the offense is death, it is impossible for man to redeem himself. It is also impossible for God, the judge, to exercise leniency and set aside the judgment. He is infinite in all that He is and does. His righteousness is, therefore, also infinite. He cannot compromise in His judgments and in their execution. He cannot set aside the penalty of His own Holy Law. It must be carried out.

7. Therefore, because man has no possibility within himself to save himself, and because God's infinite justice prevents the penalty from being set aside, if man is to be saved someone else has to do it. It must be someone who is not under the curse himself and yet is also a perfect human being. God in His own infinite wisdom found such a person, His own infinite Son. And for that purpose alone God sent His unique Son into the world to become a man. Gal 4:4-5, **But when the time had fully come, God sent his Son, born of a woman, born under law, (5) to redeem those under law, that we might receive the full rights of sons.** (NIV) In Gal 3:13, **Christ redeemed us from the curse of the law by becoming a curse for us.....** (NIV) God appointed the Son to become the redeemer of the world.

8. The price that Jesus Christ paid as a ransom for mankind had to be greater, not only for the life of one, but greater than the lives of all members of the human race put together because all were under the condemnation of death. The price He paid was His own life. He said of Himself in Matthew 20:28 in the NIV, **.....the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give his life as a ransom for many.** 1 Tim 2:5-6 tells us in the NIV that, **....the man Christ Jesus, (6) who gave himself as a ransom for all men.....**

9. The work of Jesus Christ in creating all the galaxies and our universe was incredibly fantastic to say the least. And His work today of sustaining all that He has created is totally incredible. But the work He did on the cross for the entire human race was greater by far than all the works He accomplished in the past. Hebrews 7:27, **Unlike the other high priests, he does not need to offer sacrifices day after day, first for his own sins, and then for the sins of the people. He sacrificed for their sins once for all when he offered himself.** (NIV) In the Old Testament the priests had to make sacrifice after sacrifice, for themselves and for the people. Jesus made only one sacrifice. He not only was the perfect priest, but He was the perfect sacrifice. And because His sacrifice was pure and perfect, He can purge and remove our sins completely, something all the Old Testament sacrifices put together could never do.

10. When Jesus Christ hung on the cross God laid on Him the sins of the entire human race: Isaiah 53:6, **.....the Lord** (JEHOVAH referring to God the Father) **has laid on him** (God the Son, Jesus Christ), **the iniquity of us all.** (NIV) That included the first sin of Adam. It also included every sin of everyone of the seed of Adam right up to that time and, even more, it includes all the sins of all members of the human race yet to be born. Then God's judgment upon sin fell upon him. **About the ninth hour Jesus cried out in a loud voice, "Eloi, Eloi, Lama sabachthani?" which means, "My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?"when Jesus had cried out again in a loud voice, he gave up his spirit.** (Matthew 27:46 & 50) NIV)

Here was death because of the sins of mankind. It was actually two deaths: a substitutionary spiritual death for the purging of our sins, and then a physical death because His work was completed. Isaiah 53:5 says in the NIV, **But he was pierced for our transgressions, he was crushed for our iniquities; the punishment that brought us peace was upon him, and by his wounds we are healed.**

11. Jesus Christ dealt with the sin problem once and for all. It had to be done. Jesus Christ went to the cross and bore the penalty of sin. Sin was purged, sin was judged and sin was eliminated as a factor in the eternal destiny of mankind.
12. Because all sins were judged on the cross and eliminated as a factor in the destiny of mankind, sin is no longer an issue as far as eternal salvation is concerned. The only thing left for men to do is to accept what Jesus Christ did on the cross and accept it by faith. Believe in Him, place their trust in Him as their personal Savior.

Man's old sin nature produces two things that are unacceptable to God; sins and human good. Sins were judged on the cross, and because of the law of double jeopardy no one can be judged for them again.

Therefore, when all human beings (believers and unbelievers) are judged or evaluated, no one's sin will be mentioned at the final judgment. The Christian will not lose reward for any sin. He will lose reward because he refused to learn Bible doctrine in the filling of the Holy Spirit, and because he performed many good deeds or works outside of the will and plan of God. The unbeliever will not be thrown into the lake of fire because of his sins, but because of all his good works, the good works that were done from his own free will. From his own free will the unbeliever refused to believe in Jesus Christ in order to be saved.

Literally, “Having Himself purged (eliminated) sins.”

Sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high -

Sat down - ἐκάθισεν – EKALTHISEN. Aorist active indicative third person singular of the verb καθίζω – KATHIZO. Means “to sit down.” “The seated position indicates His work was finished, in contrast to the Levitical priests who never sat down so far as their tabernacle work was concerned, and for that reason their work was never finished.....the verb ‘**sat down**’ denotes a solemn formal act. It speaks of the assumption of a position and dignity and authority. The reference is to the Son’s glorification and ascension.” (Word Studies in the Greek New Testament by Kenneth S. Wuest: Commentary of Hebrews, page 41).

AORIST TENSE (constative) which views the action of the verb in its entirety in one point of time. This takes all of the points of time when Jesus accomplished various things in His journey to the cross and places them all in one point of time in describing them. The constative aorist is also known as the once and for all aorist. Jesus “sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high” once and for all.

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject produces the action of the verb. Jesus Christ produced the action of “sitting down on the right hand of the Majesty on high.” Because Jesus Christ did all the work of purging or eliminating sins, He had the right to “sit down at the right hand of the Majesty on high.”

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative) which refers to the absolute dogmatic fact of the reality of Jesus Christ earning the right to “sit down on the right hand of the Majesty on high.”

On the right hand - ἐν δεξιᾷ – EN DEXIA. Dative feminine singular of δεξιός – DEXIOS. Means “the right hand side.” The right hand side is the place of honor.

Of the Majesty - μεγαλωσύνης – MEGALOSUNTES. Genitive feminine singular of the noun μεγαλωσύνη – MEGALOSUNE. Means “greatness, majesty.” This is a “periphrasis” which is “the use of a longer phrase in the place of a possible shorter form of expression.” This is sometimes called “circumlocution,” which is “the use of many words to express something where a few words might do it.” This is used in many political speeches.

The periphrasis here is used to demonstrate that there aren’t enough words in the world to express what it means for Jesus Christ in His humanity to be seated at the right hand side of the Father. For Jesus Christ in His humanity

to be seated at the right hand side of the Father is so important in history and in the resolving of the angelic conflict, that there simply aren't enough words to adequately express it. However, when words are to be selected in an attempt to express it (as they will be in our passage beginning in verse five and going through verse thirteen), the writer of Hebrews uses significant words. Since all the words in the world can't express how great it is for Jesus Christ in His humanity to be seated at the right hand of the Majesty on high, the writer of Hebrews basically says, "Let's take a few words and try it." Therefore, what words will he select? And do you know what words were selected to be used by God the Holy Spirit to explain this periphrasis? The words of the Old Testament. Words from the Word of God. **"The Word of God is alive and powerful."** (Heb 4:12).

If this periphrasis is going to be expressed adequately, then we must know that from verse five all the way through verse thirteen we will have nothing but a series of verses quoted from the Old Testament. This is where it really becomes interesting. When these verses are quoted from the Old Testament, they are not quoted from the Hebrew Masoretic text, but from the Greek translation of the Hebrew Old Testament. This translation is called the Septuagint or the LXX, 70. Because it was the work of 70 translators who worked on the Greek translation of the Old Testament.

In the concept of periphrasis it says in effect, "All of the words in the world could never adequately describe this but there are some words that will communicate what is meant, and these words are in the Old Testament." Once again we see the importance of understanding the Old Testament along with doctrines pertaining to the Church Age.

The question naturally comes up, "Why did the writer of Hebrews quote the Old Testament from the Greek instead of the original Hebrew text?" There are a number of possible reasons, but one is because the author is now dealing with a Greek language which is the best and the most technical way to express what is contained in the periphrasis. What is contained in the periphrasis is so important that the writer wants to use the language that can best describe what he wants to say. And he has two languages to choose from. He has the Septuagint, the Greek translation of the Old Testament, and he has the original Hebrew text. The Hebrew is a more ancient language which lacks technical words and grammar, while the Greek of the Septuagint is a more modern language and a language that is the most technical of all. Therefore, he quotes from the Septuagint so that no one will miss the power and the dynamics of the Word of God.

The principle of this periphrasis is that God's Word, though originally written in Hebrew, Chaldean, Aramaic and Greek languages — which are foreign to us,

the power of the message can come out in the English. A language with more or less words, but with technical words, is able to communicate something of the phenomenal thing here. This is the basic message of the periphrasis.

Therefore, to define in simple terms the use of many words to define what could be described in a few words the writer's message can be summarized in seven basic points:

1. The Son is superior to Old Testament prophets.
2. The Son inherits all things.
3. The Son created all things.
4. The Son is the radiance of the Father's glory.
5. The Son is the perfect expression of Deity.
6. The Son sustains all that He has created.
7. The Son "purged" or eliminated the problem of sin by His work on the cross.

(Word Studies in the Greek New Testament by Kenneth S. Wuest,
Hebrews Commentary pages 41-42)

On high - ἐν ὑψηλοῖς – EN HUPSELOIS. First we have the preposition ἐν – EN plus the dative masculine plural of the adjective ὑψλός – HUPSLOS. Means "high, lofty, elevated." But this means a lot more than just "on high." For example, down here on this little speck that we call earth is the devil's kingdom, and billions and billions of light years away is the third heaven where Jesus Christ is seated at the right hand side of God the Father, and that is the glory spot of all creation. As Jesus Christ sits at the right hand side of the Father, He keeps the earth in its place along with all the planets and moons. Everything remains in orbit, and everything is sustained. That is why we are still here. And all of this sustaining ministry takes place **"on high."**

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 3: "Who (Jesus Christ) being the radiance or shining forth of the glory and the exact image of His (God the Father's) essence, and maintaining all things by the verbal expression of His (Christ's) power, having Himself accomplished the purging (eliminating) of sins, sat down at the right hand side of the Majesty on high."

The writer of this epistle has taken us from eternity past right down to the status quo of things right now. In one sentence he took us all the way through history and he gave us information as to what is really important. What is important? Jesus Christ and no one else!

Doctrine of the Ascension and the Session

1. The Ascension is that doctrine of Christology pertaining to the transfer of our Lord's true humanity from planet earth to the third heaven in a resurrection body.
2. The Session is that doctrine of Christology pertaining to the glorification of our Lord's humanity at the right hand of the Father in a resurrection body.
3. These doctrines (Ascension and Session) are closely related to and based on the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead. If Christ remained on earth after His resurrection He would have maintained a limited glory, but when He went to the third heaven He became superior to all in God's creation, and now has unlimited glory.
4. After the resurrection of our Lord's humanity He remained on earth for forty days before His ascension. The ascension of Jesus Christ occurred on day forty in His resurrection body. This period of time demonstrated the capabilities of the resurrection body. The resurrection body can eat food and drink water, pass through physical structures, disappear at will and defy gravity.
5. The Ascension and Session of Christ are based on the capabilities of the resurrection body.
 - A. It can travel horizontally and vertically at unlimited speed, and is capable of unlimited space travel.
 - B. Our Lord traveled horizontally during his forty days on planet earth, as well as moving through closed doors.
 - C. The ascension of Christ demonstrated the vertical travel of the resurrection body, moving with ease through the atmosphere of the earth, the galaxies of the stellar universe with its billions and billions of light years of space. During His journey He was opposed by Satan, fallen angels and demons who did not want Him to complete His victory. Colossians 2:15 tells us that our Lord **"made a public spectacle of them."** The structure and the words used in the Greek text in Col 2:15 is that of describing a "triumphant procession" made by conquering generals after winning a war.

Many Bible scholars believe that this "triumphant procession" took ten days. It was this long from our Lord's departure from the earth until the arrival of the Holy Spirit at Pentecost ten days later.

6. Upon arrival in the third heaven our Lord was seated at the right hand side of God the Father. This is the Doctrine of the Session.
7. The chronology of these events is this:
 - A. Our Lord's resurrection after three days in the grave.
 - B. He lived and ministered forty days on the earth in His resurrection body.
 - C. His ascension was at the end of those forty days, ten days before the Church Age began.
 - D. After His Resurrection and Ascension He was seated at the right hand side of the Father, the place of highest honor. This is called the Session.

We know the exact number of days because His resurrection occurred on the Feast of Firstfruits. The Feast of Pentecost would occur fifty days later. On the fortieth day our Lord ascended, and He told His disciples that the baptism of the Holy Spirit would come in a few days (ten days to be exact).

8. Both the Ascension and Session of Christ were accomplished in His resurrection body. Though co-equal and co-eternal with God, it was the true humanity of Christ that was seated at the right hand side of the Father.
9. These two Doctrines of Ascension and Session combine to form the climax of our Lord's strategic victory at His First Advent.
10. Historical account.
 - A. Acts 1:9-11, **After he said this, he was taken up before their very eyes, and a cloud hid him from their sight. (10) They were looking intently up into the sky as he was going, when suddenly two men dressed in white stood beside them. (11) "Men of Galilee," they said, "why do you stand here looking into the sky? This same Jesus, who has been taken from you into heaven, will come back in the same way you have seen him go into heaven."** (NIV)
 - B. While the angels were still speaking, our Lord was already going through the second heaven facing the opposition of Satan, fallen angels and demons (taught in the Greek of Col 2:15;) as He continued His journey into the third heaven and the throne room of the heavenly temple.

11. Significance of the Session.

A. After His ascension our Lord fulfilled the prophecy of Psalm 110:1, **The Lord** (God the Father) **says to my Lord** (Jesus Christ) : **“Sit at my right hand until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet.”** (NIV (Emphasis added by the author)

B. This prophecy is quoted a number of times in the New Testament:
Matthew 22:44, **The Lord said to my Lord: “Sit at my right hand until I put your enemies under your feet.”** (NIV)

Mark 12:36; **The Lord said to my Lord: “Sit at my right hand until I put your enemies under your feet.”** (NIV)

Luke 20:42-43; **David himself declares in the Book of Psalms: “The Lord said to my Lord: ‘Sit at my right hand (43) until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet.’”** (NIV)

Acts 2:34-35; **For David did not ascend to heaven, and yet he said, ‘The Lord said to my Lord: “Sit at my right hand (35) until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet.’** (NIV)

Hebrews 1:13, **To which of the angels did God ever say, “Sit at my right hand until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet”?** (NIV)

Hebrews 10:12-14, **But when this priest** (Jesus Christ) **had offered for all time one sacrifice for sins, he sat down at the right hand of God. (13) Since that time he waits for his enemies to be made his footstool, (14) because by one sacrifice he has made perfect forever those who are being made holy.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by author)

This is quoted so often because it is very important and most Christians hardly ever think about it. But it is important for us to know this, because the Levitical priests could never sit down in the tabernacle and later in the temple because their work was never done. But the work of Jesus was a completed work; therefore, the Bible emphasizes the fact that He sat down when He arrived at the throne room of the third heaven.

C. The Resurrection, Ascension and Session all deal with the humanity of Jesus Christ. Jesus Christ is undiminished deity and

true humanity in one person forever. Just as only the humanity of Jesus Christ could provide our eternal salvation by receiving the judgment of our sins in His own body, so only the humanity of Jesus Christ could be resurrected, ascended and seated at the right hand side of God the Father.

- D. The humanity of Jesus Christ in hypostatic union is now exalted and glorified at the right hand side of the Father where His position is one of being seated.

Acts 2:32-33b, **God has raised this Jesus to life, and we are all witnesses of the fact. (33) Exalted to the right hand of God.....** (NIV)

Acts 5:31, **God exalted him to his own right hand as Prince and Savior that he might give repentance and forgiveness of sins to Israel.** (NIV)

Philippians 2:9-11; **Therefore God exalted him to the highest place and gave him the name that is above every name, (10) that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, in heaven and on earth and under the earth, (11) and every tongue confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.** (NIV)

12. The session and the strategic victory of Jesus Christ in the angelic conflict.

- A. The Ascension and Session of Jesus Christ is not only related to the hypostatic union, but it is also related to the angelic conflict. The fact that the Resurrection, Ascension and Session are based on the strategic victory of our Lord in the angelic conflict is the subject of Hebrews chapters 1 & 2.

- B. Hebrews 1:3, **Who (Jesus Christ) being the radiance or shining forth of the glory and the exact image of His (God's) essence, and maintaining all things by the verbal expression of His (Christ's) power, having Himself accomplished the purging (eliminating) of sins, sat down at the right hand side of the Majesty on high.** (Expanded translation by the author)

- C. Hebrews 1:13, **But to which of the angels said he at any time, 'Sit on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool?** (KJV) God the Father never said this to any angel, only to Jesus Christ. It is also significant that God the Father said this to the humanity of Christ in a resurrection body.

Before his fall, Satan was as high as one could get in the government of God, but he was not satisfied. He wanted to be God Himself. Therefore, God fired him and kicked him out of His government forever. And now, God has created a plan by which He actually appoints a human being higher than Satan's original position. That human being is Jesus Christ. This also means that all those who are in Christ (positional sanctification) and are inferior to angels in their current human bodies on earth, will one day in the future, in resurrection bodies, be like our Lord in His resurrection body (Phil 3:20-21), and will be superior to all angels. This was all established by our Lord's session.

- D. I Peter 3:22, **Who is gone into heaven, and is on the right hand of God; angels and authorities and powers being made subject unto him.** (KJV) With the resurrection of Jesus Christ all angelic creatures including demons and fallen angels are subordinated to Him in His humanity. That is a very important fact. Because, in His deity, Jesus Christ is the creator of the angels. In His humanity, He was made lower than the angels (Heb 2:7). But now in His resurrected humanity He is higher than all the angels!

Someday in our resurrection bodies we will share that same privilege experientially. Being in union with Christ we are already positionally higher than angels, but in resurrection bodies we will be experientially and physically higher than angels.

- E. Ephesians 1:22, **And God (the Father) placed all things under his feet (the feet of Jesus Christ) and appointed him to be head over everything for the church...**(NIV) The Church Age is the mystery age because we have been given infinitely more than any Old Testament, tribulational or Millennial saint. We possess unique things which are unbelievably fantastic, which have never existed before and will never exist again after the Rapture and resurrection of the Church. The Holy Spirit will indwell our resurrection bodies for all eternity, I Cor 2:12, **We have not received the spirit of the world but the Spirit who is from God, that we may understand what God has freely given us.** The aorist tense of the word "**received**" is a once and for all aorist. When we receive the Holy Spirit at the point of salvation that was a once and for all act.

Therefore, since Israel had rejected Jesus Christ as their Messiah and king, He will not directly rule over them until the

Second Advent when He returns to the earth and sets up His kingdom. Then, at that time He will fulfill all of the covenants that were promised to Israel. But until then, God has established a new race of people on the earth made up of Jews and Gentiles who accept Jesus Christ as personal Savior. This new race of people is called "The Church," referring to all individuals who have placed their faith in Jesus Christ. All who believe in Jesus Christ as their personal Savior are called "saints," or those who are "set apart unto God."

13. The session and the efficacy of Christ's sacrifice on the cross.
 - A. Hebrews 10:12, **But this man** (Jesus Christ, in contrast to the Old Testament sacrifices), **after he had offered one sacrifice for sins for ever, sat down on the right hand of God;** (KJV) The work of Jesus Christ on the cross was efficacious (effective in handling the sin problem). When He received the imputation of our sins in His own body and God the Father judged them, that settled the sin question for all time. Therefore, to indicate the efficacy of His sacrifice, our Lord sat down at the right hand of God.

The physical death of our Lord told us that His work was completed. Just before He died physically He said in John 19:30, **"It is finished."** The Greek word is the perfect middle indicative of the verb τετέλεσται – TETELESTAI. The word means "to finish or to complete," but the perfect tense is important here. It refers to that which "was finished in the past with results that stand forever." In other words, before our Lord died physically, He had already paid for all the sins of mankind by His substitutionary spiritual death. During the three hours He was bearing the sins of mankind, He was dying a substitutionary spiritual death. That was what paid the price for our sins, NOT HIS PHYSICAL DEATH.

Therefore the Resurrection, Ascension and Session is the verification of the efficacy of our Lord's saving work on the cross. Furthermore, this efficacious saving work occurred while our Lord was still physically alive. He did not die for our sins in His physical death; He died for our sins as a substitute for us in a substitutionary spiritual death, wherein each and every sin of the human race was imputed to Christ and judged while He was still alive physically.

- B. Therefore, Christ died twice on the cross. He died a substitutionary spiritual death for the sins of the world, which provided our so great salvation; then He died a unique physical death in which there was the separation of His soul and spirit from His body. His human spirit went to be with the Father (Luke 23:46), His soul went to Paradise in Hades (Luke 23:43), and His body went into the tomb (Matt 27:60).
- C. Hebrews 9:23-26, **It was necessary, then, for the copies of the heavenly things to be purified with these sacrifices, but the heavenly things themselves with better sacrifices than these. (24) For Christ did not enter a man-made sanctuary that was only a copy of the true one; he entered heaven itself, now to appear for us in God's presence. (25) Nor did he enter heaven to offer himself again and again, the way the high priest enters the Most Holy Place every year with blood that is not his own. (26) Then Christ would have had to suffer many times since the creation of the world. But now he has appeared once for all at the end of the ages to do away with sin by the sacrifice of himself. (NIV)**
14. The session related to the importance of the Church Age. Eph 1:18-23; Vs 18, **I pray also that the eyes of your heart may be enlightened** (post salvation learning and application of Bible doctrine) **in order that you may know the hope to which he has called you** (divine call: election and predestination), **the riches of his glorious inheritance** (divine assets given to all Church Age believers) **in the saints,** The first thing God ever did for us is the means of glorifying Himself. In eternity past, billions and billions of years ago, God the Father set aside fantastic blessings for each and every one of us. But the distribution of those blessings only occurs when the believer learns and applies the Word of God daily and grows to spiritual maturity. It is only in spiritual maturity that the believer can glorify God to the maximum.
- Eph 1:19, **And his incomparably great power for us** (this refers to the maximum availability of divine power to every Church Age believer) **who believe. That power is like the working of his mighty strength,** (executing the Christian way of life through maximum learning and application of the Word of God) (vs 20) **which he exerted in Christ when he raised him from the dead and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly realms....(NIV)**
(Interpretations added by the author)

Part of the mystery doctrine of the Church Age is the fact that divine power is available to us as never before in history, i.e., the omnipotence of the Father, Son and Holy Spirit. When Jesus Christ was seated at the right hand of the Father in the session after His ascension, that's when this plan was placed into operation. The Christian way of life and the availability of divine power to us is unique. The uniqueness of the Church Age is reflected in the fact that it was placed into operation at the point of the session of Jesus Christ. God is perfect; therefore, His Plan is perfect. A PERFECT PLAN FROM A PERFECT GOD EXCLUDES ANY HUMAN POWER FOR ITS EXECUTION. A perfect plan from a perfect God demands the use of divine power or perfect power for its execution. Therefore, there is no substitute for the utilization of divine power in living the Christian life.

DIVINE POWER AND HUMAN POWER ARE MUTUALLY EXCLUSIVE. For the believer to utilize human dynamics and call it the Christian way of life is blasphemy. To the extent that the Church Age believer relies on human power or gets involved in legalism, he has failed to fulfill God's purpose, plan and objective for sustaining him in this life. The perfect plan of God cannot accept or utilize any form of human power or human ability or anything we can do. Anything we can do in our own power is not a part of the Christian life. Only through the learning and application of Bible doctrine can divine power be understood and utilized in the Christian way of life. There is no substitute for the learning and application of Bible doctrine on the part of the believer.

Eph 1:20, **Which** (superior power) **he exerted in Christ when he raised him from the dead and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly realms,** (NIV) This power is superior to every authority. In His deity, Christ was always superior, but the superiority in vs 20 refers to the humanity of Christ in a resurrection body. Therefore, the session becomes very important, because the power that raised Him from the dead is now delegated to the royal family, all Church Age believers. Philippians 4:13, **I can do everything through him who gives me the strength.** (NIV) The word “do” is the present active indicative of the verb ἰσχύς – ISCHUS, meaning “to have the ability, to have the strength or might.”

This is one of the words used for the “ability and power of God.” The word translated “**strength**” is the present active participle of the verb ἐνδυναμόω – ENDUNAMOO. The word DUNAMIS is one of the words used for the power of God. Paul is saying that the ability and power of God was given to him to accomplish that which God desired.

In resurrection, the power of the Holy Spirit restored the human soul of our Lord to His body, and the power of God the Father restored His human spirit to His body. (Since He dismissed His spirit into the hands of the Father according to Luke 23:46, it was the Father who restored His human spirit to His body. The Scriptures also tell us that His soul went to Hades by the power of the Holy Spirit, I Pet 3:18-19, and therefore it was the Holy Spirit who restored His human soul back to His body at His resurrection). The divine power that raised Christ from the dead is now available to you only because you are a part of the body of Christ, the royal family of God. The Church Age believer is a member of God's royal family because of the permanent indwelling of the members of the Trinity. Believers in all other dispensations are simply family of God. But Church Age believers are designated "royal family." The Doctrine of the Royal Family will be discussed in detail in Hebrews chapter seven. As members of the royal family divine power is utilized, transferred, and delegated to all Church Age believers. It is assigned to us as a part of the invisible assets given at the point of salvation. It is provided by the power of God the Father, but it is transferred and delegated through the learning and application of Bible doctrine by the power of God the Holy Spirit.

Eph 1:21, **Far above all rule and authority, power and dominion, and every title that can be given, not only in the present age** (the Church Age) **but also in the one to come.** (Millennial Kingdom) (NIV)

Eph 1:22, **And God placed all things under his feet** (Jesus Christ) **and appointed him to be head over everything for the church,** (23) **which is his body, the fullness of him who fills everything in every way.** (NIV) The first phase of "operation footstool" is the Resurrection, Ascension and Session of Jesus Christ. The second phase of "operation footstool" is the Second Advent of Jesus Christ. At that time the baptism of fire will remove all unbelievers from the earth, both Jews and Gentiles. In this second phase of "operation footstool," Satan is sentenced to 1,000 years of prison.

Another part of the second phase of "operation footstool" occurs at the end of the Millennium with the suppression of the Gog and Magog revolution sponsored by Satan after his release from prison.

Then the last phase of the first resurrection occurs when all those who have believed in Jesus Christ during the Millennium will be resurrected to stand before the judgment seat for evaluation. Then they will join all the other believers who have already been resurrected and evaluated: Old Testament believers and Church Age believers.

Next comes the second resurrection, which involves the judgment of unbelievers only, followed by the execution of the prehistoric sentencing for Satan and all fallen angels.

So Jesus Christ is the ruler of all creatures, angelic and human no matter how rebellious they may be. The most rebellious of all creatures are not demons, but born again believers. They fail to fulfill the Christian way of life which consists of learning and applying the Word of God consistently in the filling of the Holy Spirit for the purpose of growth to spiritual maturity.

15. The Session and the Royal Priesthood.

- A. Hebrews 8:1, **The point of what we are saying is this: We do have such a high priest, who sat down at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in heaven,.....** (NIV)

Our Lord was not qualified by birth to be a Levitical priest in Israel because He is from the tribe of Judah. Only Levites from the family of Aaron could be priests in Israel. His priesthood however, supersedes the priesthood of Israel because He is both a king and priest. Our Lord's priesthood is patterned after a royal priesthood, that of Melchizedek. Melchizedek was both a king and a priest. Our Lord is the king-priest as the result of His Resurrection, Ascension and Session.

- B. Because you are in union with Christ you are a priest. This means that you can directly address God the Father in prayer through Jesus Christ, because He is the greatest high priest in all history. He is a royal high priest or king-priest. Therefore we pray to God the Father in the name of Jesus Christ, and in the effectiveness or the power of the Holy Spirit.

- C. Jesus Christ is the high priest, and we are a kingdom of priests. As our high priest, Jesus Christ makes intercession for us at the right hand of God the Father. The Ascension and Session sets aside the Levitical priesthood replacing it with the royal priesthood. I Peter 2:9, **But you are a chosen people, a royal priesthood.....** (NIV)

Revelation 1:6, **and has made us to be a kingdom and priests to serve his God and Father.....** (NIV)

Revelation 5:10, **You have made them to be a kingdom and priests to serve our God,.....** (NIV)

- D. Jesus Christ is our high priest. Hebrews 7:25, **Therefore he is able to save completely those who come to God through him, because he always lives to INTERCEDE FOR THEM.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Hebrews 8:1, **The point of what we are saying is this: We do have such a high priest, who sat down at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in heaven,....** (NIV)

Hebrews 10:1-10, **The law is only a shadow of the good things coming—not the realities themselves. For this reason it can never, by the same sacrifices repeated endlessly year after year, make perfect** (make complete, referring to spiritual maturity) **those who draw near to worship.** (2) **If it could** (make individuals complete or make them spiritually mature) **would they not have stopped being offered? For the worshipers would have been cleansed once for all, and would no longer have felt guilty for their sins.** (3) **But those sacrifices are an annual reminder of sins,** (4) **because it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins.**

(5) **Therefore, when Christ came into the world, he said:** (quotation from Psalm 40:6-8 from the Septuagint) **“Sacrifice and offering you did not desire, but a body you prepared for me; (6) with burnt offerings and sin offerings you were not pleased. (7) Then I said, ‘Here I am — it is written about me in the scroll — I have come to do your will, O God.’” (8) First he said, “Sacrifice and offerings, burnt offerings and sin offerings you did not desire, nor were you pleased with them,”** (although the law required them to be made). (9) **Then he said, “Here I am, I have come to do your will.” He sets aside the first** (referring to the Mosaic Law) **to establish the second** (the New Covenant to the Church). (10) **And by that will, we have been made holy through the sacrifice of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.** (NIV) (Amplification provided by the author)

16. The Session Demands a New Mental Attitude from Believers.

- A. Colossians 3:1-2, **Since, then, you have been raised with Christ,** (we have been raised with Christ in the baptism of the Spirit and current positional truth. See Rom 6:1-10;) **set your hearts on things above, where Christ is seated at the right hand of God.** (2) **Set your minds on things above** (the special blessing from God for learning and growing in grace), **not**

on earthly things. (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author) The knowledge of Bible doctrine requires us to have the right priorities. Bible doctrine must be first in your life.

- B. The desire to possess your very own special and personal blessings from God motivates you to execute the Christian way of life. This motivation results in your consistent learning and application of Bible doctrine in the filling of the Holy Spirit.
- C. The fact that the humanity of Jesus Christ is seated at the right hand of the Father, except for the time of the Rapture and His permanent move at the Second Advent, is indicative of the fact that He has made the most fantastic system of power available to you. How? Through the gift of the Holy Spirit which could not be given until Jesus Christ was glorified (John 7:39).
- D. Objective thinking about “things above” includes understanding all the things God has given you at salvation and understanding what the true Christian life is really all about. Most Christians do not understand what the spiritual life really is. If you think the Christian life is a system of good works or a certain code of conduct, then you really don’t understand what the Christian life is all about. The Christian life is all about learning, not doing. II Tim 2:15, **Do your best** (through study) **to present yourself to God as one approved, a workman who does not need to be ashamed and who correctly handles** (divides) **the word of truth.**(NIV) (Explanations added by the author)

II Peter 3:18, **But grow in the grace and knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ. To him be glory both now and forever! Amen.** (NIV)

- E. The mental attitude of the Christian is to think Bible doctrine. Philippians 2:5, **Your attitude** (thinking) **should be the same as that of Christ Jesus.....** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author) This doesn’t mean that we can’t learn about fascinating human subjects. They often demonstrate and illustrate many principles. And it’s always a wonderful thing to have a hobby or two in the field of thought and to pursue that hobby. But when it comes to the Christian life, the system of divine viewpoint thought must be based on knowledge, understanding and application of Bible doctrine. If we are going to utilize divine power we must understand the mechanics for its transfer and for its utilization in our lives. Ignorance of Bible doctrine is a guarantee that you will function on human power all of your life.

17. The Session and the Authority of Jesus Christ.

A. The Session is an indication of the authority of Jesus Christ.

Romans 8:34, **Who is he that condemns? Christ Jesus, who died — more than that, who was raised to life — IS AT THE RIGHT HAND OF GOD and is also interceding for us.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

B. Jesus Christ is the possessor of all authority and He is in complete control of all things at all times. Col 1:16, **For by him all things were created: things in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or powers or rulers or authorities; all things were created by him and for him.** (NIV)

18. The Session and Spiritual Self-Esteem. Whether you have human self-esteem or not is irrelevant. But it is important for you as a Christian to have spiritual self-esteem. Spiritual self-esteem is another benefit that comes from learning large amounts of Bible doctrine. Many times Christians display arrogance and call it self-esteem. But that only occurs when those Christians do not have enough Bible doctrine in their souls to have true spiritual self-esteem. But the Session is related to our spiritual self-esteem.

Hebrews 12:2-3, **Let us fix our eyes on Jesus, the author and perfecter (completer) of our faith (doctrine, that which is believed in), who for the joy set before him endured the cross, scorning its shame, and SAT DOWN AT THE RIGHT HAND OF THE THRONE OF GOD. (3) Consider him who endured such opposition from sinful men, so that you will not grow weary and lose heart.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 3: “Who being the radiance or shining forth of the glory and the exact image of His essence, and maintaining all things by the verbal expression of His power, having Himself accomplished the purging (eliminating) of sins, sat down at the right hand side of the Majesty on high.”

Verse three speaks of the “verbal expression of His power.” We often think of power in terms of dynamos, power plants, nuclear weapons and rockets. There are many ways that people think of power from the scientific viewpoint. But the greatest power the world has ever known is when Jesus Christ speaks.

He spoke and all creation came into existence out of nothing.

He speaks and holds everything together by “**the verbal expression of his power.**”

He speaks and destroys entire armies.

He can speak to bring out of the lowest depths of life some person who is ignored by mankind and to promote him to the highest honor.

He could speak and turn stones into better witnesses, better preachers, better teachers than anyone who has ever taught.

Whenever Jesus Christ speaks the power is absolutely phenomenal.

Verse three also talks about Jesus Christ “**purging**” or eliminating our sins. This means that every sin that has ever been committed in the human race has already been judged. This does not mean that sinners stop sinning, and it does not mean that all sinners are saved. It means that when Jesus Christ was on the cross He was actually judged for every sin that anyone has committed or will ever commit.

The sin problem has tentacles in many areas. The sin problem causes us to come into this world spiritually dead. The sin problem gives us a need for salvation. The sin problem is related to many facets and activities of life that are contrary to the plan of God, the will of God and the grace of God. But it is very important that you know and understand that every sin that you will ever commit in your lifetime, in thought, word or deed was judged on the cross.

Jesus Christ did the greatest thing for us while we were still His enemies. It is almost beyond human understanding. But all sins were judged on Jesus Christ on the cross. Therefore, He did something that was unique. He accomplished the “**purging**” or elimination of all sins. What does this really mean? This means that no one will ever go to the lake of fire because of his sins, but because he has not believed in Jesus Christ as his personal Savior.

When you read Revelation 20:11-15 you will notice that at the last judgment unbelievers stand before Jesus Christ and are judged before they are thrown into the lake of fire. But what is very interesting about this Great White Throne Judgment is that nothing is said about the individual's sins. Rev 20:11-15 tells us that all the unbelievers are judged according to their “**works,**” their good deeds, not their sins. In other words, when they refused to accept the work of Jesus Christ as their substitute on the cross, they automatically chose to rely on their own works. And we know that **Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us.....** (Titus 3:5; KJV) Therefore, Jesus Christ eliminated the judicial judgment of sins by His work on the cross, and everyone who rejects the work of Christ must rely on his own work, which is greatly inferior to that of the work of Christ. By Jesus Christ's work of eliminating sins He became our High Priest.

The resurrection and the priesthood of Jesus Christ are not emphasized here, but the result is. "He sat down on the right hand side of the Majesty on high." Jesus Christ as a High Priest entered into the real Holy of Holies, the one in heaven in the throne room of God, and there He was seated at the right hand side of the Majesty in the highest place.

One theme that is going to run all the way through this chapter is this: in His humanity Jesus Christ is superior to all. In His humanity He is superior to every member of the human race. Jesus Christ in His humanity is superior to all angels, and Jesus Christ in His humanity is different from all other beings (fallen angels, demons, disembodied spirits, and creatures in the animal realm). He is different from God in that He is man, and He is different from man in that He is God. Therefore, Jesus Christ is the most unique person in all of creation. He is unique in every sense of the word. No matter how you view Him he is unique and He is superior.

He is not superior to the Godhead, but He is different in that He is the God-Man. He will always be the God-Man, He will always be in hypostatic union; that will never change.

By becoming a man, dying on the cross, rising from the dead, ascending to heaven and being seated at the right hand side of God the Father, Jesus Christ did something for the human race that the devil has been trying to do for over 6000 years. The devil has been trying by the devil's plan, by the devil's genius to lift the human race to a very high plane of international love and brotherhood, fellowship and friendship. But the devil has never succeeded and he never will. But he never stops trying. The plan of God transcends national boundaries and encompasses all the international communities.

But Jesus Christ accomplished something else that the devil could only dream of. He actually provided dignity for the human race in Himself and no one else. The dignity of the unsaved human being does not exist. The dignity of man is a false premise because all members of the human race are born spiritually dead and separated from God. There is no such thing as death with dignity before God, only before men. In fact, death in itself shows that man has no dignity before God. Death is a sign from God to man that he is totally depraved, worthless, and evil apart from God's saving plan through Jesus Christ.

Though the human race is actually lower than angels and inferior to angels, through faith in the Lord Jesus Christ, individuals of the human race become a new creation. By faith in the Lord Jesus Christ we are placed in Christ

(known as positional sanctification), and in that position we become higher than the angels. This is only possible because of the work of Jesus Christ on the cross. II Cor 5:17, **Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation** (a new spiritual species); **the old has gone, the new has come!**" (NIV) (Explanation added by the author)

Hebrews 1:1-3; Expanded Translation

1. In many parts (of the Old Testament), and in many different ways, God spoke to our forefathers by means of the prophets.
2. In these last days (of the Jewish Age), He (God) has spoken to us (with finality) through His unique Son (Jesus Christ), whom He has appointed the Heir of all things, through whom He (God) designed the ages (dispensations).

According to the exegetical breakdown of Dan 9:24 the Jewish Age will be suspended with seven years remaining on God's prophetic calendar after the Messiah is rejected at His first advent. Jesus' ministry took place in the last days of the Jewish Age, but since He was rejected, the Church Age was inserted (doctrine of intercalation). But when the Church Age ends at the Rapture, the Jewish Age will pick up where it left off and continue to its predetermined end with the seven years of Tribulation.

3. Who (Jesus Christ) being the radiance or shining forth of the glory and the exact image of His (God's) essence, and maintaining all things by the verbal expression of His (Christ's) power, having Himself accomplished the purging (eliminating) of sins, sat down at the right hand side of the Majesty on high.

Hebrews 1:4; (KJV)

Being made so much better than the angels, as he hath by inheritance obtained a more excellent name than they.

This informal and abrupt introduction of angels shows that the writer was addressing Jews, who were familiar with the important part that angels played in the Old Testament particularly in the giving of the law.

Summary Concerning Angels

1. Angels are spirit beings and do not have flesh and blood as do human beings. But they do have bodies. The Bible seems to indicate that the angelic bodies are composed of light, and are capable of appearing in human form. In fact, in Hebrews 13:2 we are warned to be careful how we treat strangers, since we might be **“entertaining angels without knowing it.”** (NIV)
2. Angels may also appear in other forms. Speaking of an angel at Christ’s resurrection Matthew reports that **His appearance was like lightning, and his clothes were white as snow. (4) The guards were so afraid of him that they shook and became like dead men.** (Matt 28:3-4; NIV) This angel appeared in dazzling and brilliant glory.
3. Angels are highly intelligent and have emotions. They **“rejoice,”** for example, when a sinner is saved (Luke 15:10). Angels can speak to men, as recorded in many places in Scripture. The Apostle Paul says in Gal 1:8, **But even if we or an angel from heaven should preach a gospel other than the one we preached to you, let him be eternally condemned!** (NIV)
4. Angels do not marry or procreate at the present time, but they did in the distant past. Matthew 22:29-30, **Jesus replied, “You are in error because you do not know the Scriptures or the power of God. (30) At the resurrection people will neither marry nor be given in marriage; they will be like the angels in heaven.”** (NIV) The phrase **“given in marriage”** is in the present tense in the Greek to indicate that at the present time angels are not given in marriage, although in the past they were. If angels had never been given in marriage in the past, or never been involved in sexual activities, the perfect tense would have been used to indicate this. But Jesus used the present tense to indicate that in the present time angels are not “given in marriage.”

5. Angels are not subject to death. Nowhere in the Bible does it indicate that they die or can be annihilated. A third of them fell in their rebellion against God lead by Satan (Rev 12:4), but they still exist as fallen angels under the authority of Satan.
6. The angels were created long before man and are, therefore, countless ages older than mankind. Evidently they number in the trillions. Even after a large number of them sided with Satan at his fall, numberless holy angels were left. In his vision of the **Ancient of Days** (Dan 7:9), Daniel saw “**thousands upon thousands**” attending Him and “**ten thousand times ten thousand**” standing before Him (Daniel 7:10, NIV)

In his vision from the Island of Patmos, John also speaks of a vast heavenly multitude that included angels. **Then I looked and heard the voice of many angels, numbering thousands upon thousands, and ten thousand times ten thousand....** (Rev 5:11 NIV)

7. According to Mark 13:32 and Jude 6, the angels live in all of the heavens. The heaven where God resides in a special way is called the third heaven. Even though God resides in the third heaven, which is His heavenly throne, He is also omnipresent. He is everywhere at the same time. The second heaven contains the starry galaxies of all the universes, and the first heaven refers to the space and atmosphere around the earth. Today we hear many theories and fanciful stories about extraterrestrial life. Though they are not of the kinds portrayed on TV and in the movies, special beings do indeed inhabit other parts of the universe. They are called angels.
8. Angels are highly organized and are divided into ranks in what is without doubt a very complex organization. The various ranks have supervisory responsibilities over thrones, dominions, principalities, powers, authorities and such. Among the special classes of angels are the cherubim (found 65 times in the Old Testament, as in Isaiah 37:16), seraphim (found twice in the Old Testament, Isaiah 6:2 & 6:6), and those described simply as living creatures (a term that is used 9 times in the Old Testament, as in Ezekiel 1:5, 13, 14, 15 & 19).
9. Angels are more powerful than men. Men must call on divine power to deal with fallen angels. We are told in Eph 6:10 & 12 to **...be strong in the Lord and in his mighty power..... (12) For our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the powers of this dark world and against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly realms.** (referring to fallen angels) (NIV)

10. Angels can move and act with incredible speed. Sometimes they are pictured with wings, suggesting fast travel. Angels have names and some of these names are recorded in the Word of God: Michael, Gabriel and Lucifer. Michael is the head of the armies of heaven (Rev 12:7) and Gabriel is called the messenger angel because he is always seen delivering messages to the servants of God, such as Daniel, Zechariah the priest in Luke 1:19, and Mary in Luke 1:26. Lucifer was the name of Satan before his fall.
11. Angels minister to God and do His bidding. They are both spectators and participants in His mighty works, both redemptive and judgmental. They ministered to Jesus Christ on earth before the cross. At the conclusion of His temptation angels came and ministered to Him. They also care for God's redeemed by watching over Church Age believers, assisting God in answering prayer (as in Daniel 9:20-23), delivering from danger (Daniel 6:22), giving encouragement and protecting children. They also minister to the unsaved by giving them the gospel message (as in Rev 14:6-7), also by announcing and then inflicting judgment.

JEWISH VIEW OF ANGELS

1. Because of the writings in the Talmud and other popular rabbinical interpretations and ideas, the Jewish people at the time of the writing of the book of Hebrews had begun to embellish, adorn, or exaggerate the basic Old Testament teachings concerning angels. Therefore, the writer of Hebrews was not only writing against the backdrop of true Biblical teaching, but also against that of common Jewish misconceptions.
3. Many Jews believed that angels were very important to the Old Covenant. They looked at these creatures as the highest beings next to God Himself. They believed that God was surrounded by angels and that angels were the instrument to bring His Word to men and of working out His will in the universe. Angels were thought to be immaterial or ghostly creatures made of a fiery substance like blazing light who did not eat or drink or procreate.
4. Some Jews believed that a group of angels objected to the creation of man and were immediately annihilated and that others objected to the giving of the Law and attacked Moses on his way up Mount Sinai. Many names for angels were coined. The supposed "presence of angels" who stayed in the presence of God at all times were given such names as Raphael, Yurriel, Phanuel, Gabriel and Michael. EL is the name for God

and was used as the ending for each of the names of angels who were true to God. We are not told what their previous names were. Just as in the New Testament, followers of Jesus were given new names to replace their given names, such as Matthew. The Hebrew form is “Mattathias” meaning “a gift of Jehovah, was referred to as “Levi.” Peter is a Greek name meaning “stone.” Jesus renamed him “Cephas,” an Aramaic name meaning “stone.” Saul is a Hebrew name meaning “asked for.” Saul of Tarsus changed his name to Paul meaning “little.” It is believed by many that Paul wanted to be known as “the little one” in Christ’s service. Therefore, we see a pattern of names being changed when one turns to God and places faith in Him. This appeared to have occurred with the angels who remained true to God during the rebellion of Lucifer, and in the beginning of the Church Age we see the same pattern emerge.

5. The Jews believed two hundred angels controlled the movement of the stars and that one very special angel, the calendar angel, controlled the never-ending succession of days, months and years. A mighty angel took control of seas, while others superintended frost, dew, rain, snow, hail, thunder and lightning.
6. They believed that other angels were wardens of hell and torturers of the damned. There were even recording angels who wrote down every word men spoke. There were angels of death, a guardian angel for every nation and even for every child. One rabbi claimed that angels were so numerous that every blade of grass had its angel.
7. Many Jews believed that the Old Covenant was brought to them from God by angels. This, above all else, exalted the angels in the minds of the children of Israel. They believed that angels were the mediators of their covenant with God, and that angels continually ministered God’s blessings to them. Even though this was basically true, they distorted the truth. This was done primarily by many Jews accepting Greek culture and becoming Hellenistic. The Sadducees in the Jewish Sanhedrin are a prime examples of this.
8. In Galatians 3:19 Paul asks, **What then, was the purpose of the law? It was added because of transgressions until the Seed to whom the promise referred had come. The law was put into effect through angels by a mediator.** (NIV)
The Old Covenant was brought to man and maintained by angelic mediation. The Jews knew this, and consequently had the highest regard for angels. Some Jews respected angels so much that they

actually worshiped them. Gnosticism involved, among other things, the worship of angels. It even reduced Jesus Christ to being an angel. The Colossian Church had been flirting with Gnosticism and Paul warned them about this in Colossians 2:18, **Do not let anyone who delights in false humility and the WORSHIP OF ANGELS disqualify you for the prize. Such a person goes into great detail about what he has seen, and his unspiritual mind puffs him up with idle notions.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

9. To the Jewish mind angels were extremely exalted and immeasurably important.

So, if the writer of Hebrews was to persuade his fellow Jews that Christ is a Mediator of a better covenant than that given through Moses he would have to show, among other things, that Christ is better than the angels. In verses 4-14 the writer uses seven Old Testament passages to establish this truth. If the writer had tried to quote from Christian writings that Christ was a better mediator, his Jewish readers would have said, "We don't accept these writings as Scripture from God." So he wisely tells them to "Open up their own Scriptures," and then he would show them from their own Bible that Christ is a better mediator and that the New Covenant is better than the Old. His argument is powerful and irresistible.

Vs 4: **Being made so much better than the angels, as he hath by inheritance obtained a more excellent name than they.** (KJV)

Being made - γενόμενος – GENOMENOS. Second aorist middle participle nominative masculine singular of the verb γίνομαι – GINOMAI. Means "to become." To become something you were not before. Literally, "Having become." There have been a number of cults and other unorthodox religious organizations that deny the deity of Jesus Christ on the basis of the King James translation "**being made**" in verse 4, taking this to mean that Jesus Christ was created.

AORIST TENSE (culminative), which views the action of the verb in its entirety but emphasizes the end result. Jesus Christ is now seated at the right hand side of the Father and He has become something He was not before. As a member of the human race He was made lower than the angels, but now as a member of the human race in resurrection body, He is higher than the angels.

MIDDLE VOICE (reflexive). The middle voice indicates that Jesus Christ is unique. The reflexive voice means that Jesus Christ Himself and only Himself is unique and superior to all the angels.

PARTICIPE (circumstantial) denoting all the attendant circumstances involved in completing the action of the verb. This would involve His virgin conception, virgin birth, a perfect life of 33 years, His work on the cross, His resurrection, ascension and His session to the right hand side of God the Father. These are all a part of the circumstantial participle.

You and I are not superior to angels. We are inferior by creation and by function. But Jesus Christ as a man is superior to all angels. First of all because He has no sinful nature, secondly, because He always avoided doing human good. All the good He did was in the power of the Holy Spirit making it divine good. Also, He was minus any personal sins.

Even though these things are unique in themselves, these things did not make Him better than the angels. What made Him better than the angels was: first of all He possesses a resurrection body, and secondly, He is seated at the right hand side of the Father in His resurrection body.

Jesus Christ, in a resurrected glorified human body, possesses a superior body to that possessed by angelic bodies. At this time in history Jesus Christ is the only one in a resurrection body, and this will be true until the Rapture and resurrection of all Church Age believers.

Literally, "Having become."

So much better -

So much - τοσούτω - TOSOUTO. Dative neuter singular instrumental case of the pronoun τοσούτος - TOSOUTOS. Means "by so much, so great." The instrumental case speaks "of something He became, something more permanent, something superior."

Better - κρείττων - KREITTON. This is the comparative of κράτος - KRATUS (This is defined and explained by A.T. Robertson in his six volumes of "Word Pictures in the New Testament"). KRATUS refers to "inherent power." Jesus Christ inherited power from His very birth. First of all He was born without a sinful nature which gave Him power. Second, He was born without the imputation of Adam's sin and that gave Him power. (Note: the imputation of Adam's sin refers to spiritual death, possessing a sinful nature refers to the contamination of all the cells in the physical body, which is the result of spiritual death.) Third, He was born the son of David, Jewish royalty, and that gave Him power and the right to rule. Fourth, He died and rose from the dead with a unique resurrection body and that gave Him power. And fifth, He ascended to heaven and was seated at the right hand side of God the Father and that gave Him power.

Literally, “More prominent” or “More superior.”

Literally, “Having become more prominent (more superior) than the angels.”

The angels - τῶν ἀγγέλων – TON AGGELON. Genitive masculine plural of the noun ἄγγελος – AGGELOS. Meaning “messenger.” In the plural it refers to messengers. Angels are the messengers of God. In our context this is the ablative genitive case. It is an ablative of comparison. The ablative of comparison tells us that the writer is deliberately making a comparison between all angels and one man — one unique man, Jesus Christ.

In His humanity Jesus Christ is more of a man than any man who has ever lived or ever will live. More in brilliance, common sense, integrity, compassion, moral strength, spirituality and the knowledge of God’s Word and plan. Therefore, being more of a man, He is compared to all the angels. One man in resurrection body sitting at the right hand side of God the Father is greater than all of the angels put together. That is the meaning of the ablative of comparison. Taking all of the angels, millions and millions, billions and trillions of angels and putting them together, one man is greater than all of them. Just imagine how it is going to be when the church is resurrected. There will be millions and billions and trillions of Church Age believers who are all greater than the angels. This is because we too will each have a resurrection body like that of our Lord’s. (Philippians 3:21)

Meanwhile back here on the earth we have something to do. And that something is living and breathing and learning Bible doctrine. That is our priority. The problem is this: we are living at a time when believers in Jesus Christ have become more occupied with doing things than learning Bible doctrine. Believers of today want to “work for Jesus.” But what they fail to realize is that “working for Jesus” requires a lot of Biblical knowledge, and Biblical knowledge can only be obtained by consistently learning Bible doctrine in the filling of the Holy Spirit. That is the only way, and most Christians are not interested in doing that.

PRINCIPLE: Anyone who places the doing of things, such as Christian service, above the learning of Bible doctrine has been deceived by Satanic propaganda.

Most believers do not realize that Satan wants Christians to do good works and deeds, just as long as they don’t diligently study the Word of God. Because a do-good Christian without a maximum knowledge of Bible doctrine becomes a dupe and a pawn of Satan.

Many Christians think that if they aren’t witnessing, giving, or working in the church they aren’t working for the Lord. But if you are living and breathing

and learning Bible doctrine you are doing something for the Lord that will be remembered for all eternity. You are growing spiritually. It is your spiritual growth that not only glorifies Jesus Christ, but it is a witness to all the angels and a witness to mankind whether you know it or not. Because, with your spiritual growth, comes the mental attitude of divine viewpoint, and your attitude throughout your life in all of your circumstances and situations is a greater witness than all the words you could ever think of. But until you have learned a lot of Bible doctrine you won't realize how important it really is.

By your sitting down and listening and learning from the teaching of the Word God you are doing something. You are serving the Lord Jesus Christ completely.

In the Old Testament the first thing that Levitical priests had to do was to spend years in Bible study. They had to memorize the Bible as it then existed. Their training was very extensive. It was so extensive that they not only had to learn paragraphs of Biblical passages, but they had to be able to know how many Hebrew letters were in the passage. They had to know everything about their responsibilities as a priest before they were allowed to actually do anything in the tabernacle and later in the temple. Just because they were priests from the tribe of Levi of the family of Aaron did not mean that they could immediately start working in the tabernacle or the temple. They had to go through years of study and training before they were allowed to function in their priesthood.

The same principle is true in the Church Age for the royal priesthood. As a priest you are to learn and learn, and you never stop learning. You don't start doing anything from your priesthood until you possess a lot of Biblical knowledge. In many churches of today, Christians are asked to serve the moment they are saved. They are asked to give money, usually tithing. They are asked to do various things around the church including being asked to teach Sunday school classes. But that is not true Christianity. True Christianity is when believer priests learn the Word of God and grow spiritually. Then, after they have grown, and have Bible doctrine resident in their souls they may ask to serve, or they may be asked by the pastor or a church board member to serve in some way. The Lord never asks any Christian with a minimum knowledge of His word to do anything except learn.

For example, look at the high priest of ancient Israel, Aaron. He never stopped learning. He wasn't much of a man and he wasn't a very faithful believer, but he never stopped learning. The problem that Aaron had was that he failed to apply what he had learned. Can you remember anything that

Aaron did? Sure you do. Today only the non-religious, very reformed and liberal Jews are involved in art and sculptures. There are very few Jewish painters or sculptors in their religious culture. They've had a few imposed upon them, like the abomination of desolation, when Antiochus Epiphanes placed a stature of Zeus in Solomon's temple in 167 BC. But in all the history of Judaism they have had one artist and sculpturer, Aaron. He made the golden calf and that was the sum total of Jewish art in their religion. Ancient Egyptians, Greeks and Romans have all had art and sculptures, but not the Jews.

PRINCIPLE: Everytime anyone tries to go out and do something for God on his own, he always messes it up.

What did the Old Testament high priest do? He went around wearing a breastplate which had 12 different colored stones secured to it, one for each tribe of Israel. There was a pocket under the stones containing the Urim and Thummim stones, meaning "lights and perfections." These were over the heart of the high priest when he went into the presence of the Lord (Exodus 28:29-30; Num 8:8;). The definition of the word Urim, "lights," indicates the glowing feature of the stones. These two stones were known as the "yes" and "no" stones for signals from God. When God gave the high priest an answer to a question, these stones glowed.

For example, when the Jews were to go to war God would light up the stones on the priest's breastplate indicating which tribes were to go. The priest would ask certain questions to God and God would answer "yes" or "no" through the Urim and Thummim stones. If the high priest would ask, "Should Hiram command the troops today?" The "no" stone would light up. "Should Joshua command the troop today?" The "yes" stone would light up. The principle is this: what was the high priest doing? He was doing nothing. The high priest wore a very beautiful uniform as he waited for God to communicate to him through these stones.

The high priest also killed animals, then drained the blood and placed it on the mercy seat in the Holy of Holies. But that was only on the Day of Atonement. The rest of the year the duties of offering the daily sacrifices were delegated to the 24 orders of the Levitical priesthood. This meant animal sacrifices were carried out by many different priests. Therefore, in reality, the high priest did not do a lot. He was to simply oversee the function of priests under him. The beautiful function of the high priest was learning how to do nothing and to do it well. All of this teaches us grace, grace and more grace.

It should be noted that included in the duties of the Levitical priesthood was that of teaching the Word of God as it then existed. It was only in apostasy that the Bible records the failure of the Levitical priesthood to teach as they were commanded to do. II Chronicles 15:3, **For a long time Israel was without a true God, without a priest TO TEACH and without the law.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Malachi 2:7, **For the lips of a priest ought to preserve knowledge, and from his mouth men should seek instruction — because he is the messenger of the Lord Almighty.** (NIV) Therefore, Levitical priests were to be teachers, but they failed many times throughout Jewish history. The Holy Spirit only seems to remind us of their teaching duties when they were not teaching and they were in apostasy.

Therefore, the greatest function of our priesthood is to listen to the teaching of Bible doctrine. Bible doctrine does the work, but it only works on the inside, in the thinking of the soul developing and renovating attitudes and beliefs.

This is where the Church Age believer priest can really become great in his spiritual life here on the earth. He learns Bible doctrine daily where it becomes a part of his frame of reference. Then it goes into his memory center and becomes a part of his vocabulary. Bible doctrine sets up categories in the soul where it replaces human norms and standards with divine norms and standards. There is nothing greater than this.

Over the past century Christians have lost the true meaning of what the Christian life is all about. The book of Hebrews tells us that we are priests. As priests, you come and sit and concentrate on the teaching of the Word of God.

That is the greatest thing any Christian can do here in this life. Because when you are learning the Word of God consistently, you are glorifying the Lord Jesus Christ and you are also teaching angels. (I Cor 6:3; I Pet 1:12;) You will have impact for the Lord in your life everywhere you go and you will grow to spiritual maturity.

Some have asked, “Well, if I do nothing but learn Bible doctrine when will I get to use it?” Don’t worry, you will get to use it. God will make sure of that. But only when He thinks you are ready to use it, not when you think you are ready.

Did you know that every time you decide to learn some Bible doctrine, you are actually putting down and humiliating fallen angels and demons? They have been trying to stop you from learning Bible doctrine. When you do it anyway, it is a slap in the face of Satan and the angels who follow him. All of this brings glory to the Lord Jesus Christ.

Literally, “Having become more prominent (more superior, because of the ascension and session) than angels.”

Jesus Christ as a man is more prominent than all the angels which means that He is also superior.

Than angels - this refers to all angels, fallen and elect.

As he hath by inheritance obtained -

Obtained - Not in the Greek text.

He hath by inheritance - κεκληρονόμηκεν – KEKLERONOMEKEN. Perfect active indicative third person singular of the verb κληρονομέω – KLERONOMEO. Means “to inherit.” In the perfect tense it should be translated “He has inherited.”

PERFECT TENSE refers to a past completed action having permanent results.

ACTIVE VOICE: The subject produces the action of the verb. Jesus Christ produces the action of inheriting.

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative) referring to the absolute dogmatic fact of the reality of this inheritance.

PRINCIPLE: Inheritance is based on relationship, not on works or deeds. We inherit things in this life generally from our family only because we are related to them, not because we are good or bad. The same is true in the spiritual life. We will inherit all that Jesus Christ has inherited because we are related to Him, not because we work hard and do good deeds on earth.

Jesus Christ did all the work that God the Father demanded from Him and now He inherits all things. And all those who believe in Him will share in that inheritance without doing anything except believing in Jesus Christ as personal Savior. Everything that God the Father demanded to be done was done, and it was done by Jesus Christ and no one else.

PRINCIPLE: In the human race no one does anything to receive his inheritance. It is based on relationship.

Literally, “Having become more prominent (more superior) than all the angels He has inherited a more excellent name than they have.”

A more excellent - διαφωρότερον – DIAPHOROTERON. Accusative neuter singular of the comparative διάφορος – DIAPHOROS. Means “excellent, superior.” This word is in the neuter gender. Jesus Christ is

never used in the neuter gender, but the principle of His glory is used in the neuter gender.

Name - ὄνομα – ONOMA. Accusative neuter singular meaning “name.” The Bible must be interpreted in the time in which it was written, and when this was written a “**name**” didn’t really mean a name, it actually referred to who and what the person behind the name was. It usually referred to the “reputation.”

Literally, “He has a more superior name (reputation).”

Not only in His person is He now superior to angels, but in His name or reputation. His reputation goes with His humanity, not His deity.

Than they - παρ’ αὐτοὺς – PAR AUTOUS. First of all we have the accusative case of the preposition παρὰ – PARA meaning “by the side of.” Next we have the accusative masculine third person plural of the intensive pronoun αὐτός – AUTOS referring to the angels. Literally, “Than the angels have.”

EXPANDED TRANSLATED VERSE 4: “Having become more prominent (more superior) than angels, He has inherited a more superior name (reputation) by the side of them (than the angels have).”

Every time the angels get together in a convocation in heaven, “by the side of them” is One in a human resurrection body who is superior to them. There is only one human body at angelic convocations, just one! “By the side of” all these angels in all their beauty and all of their glory that they have by right of their creation there is, “by the side of them” a man, one man in resurrection body. “By the side of” all the angels, Jesus Christ is superior, in name and reputation.

Biblically, names originally described some characteristic of an individual which set that individual apart from others. This is particularly true in the names of God. In the Bible God has many names. The names are given to distinguish Him from others by virtue of a characteristic. He might have a name which is really emphasizing a characteristic, but not that by which we address Him. For instance in the Bible there are names like אֱלֹהִים – ELOHIM translated “God.” יְהוָה – JEHOVAH or YEHWAH translated “Lord.” אֲדֹנָי – ADONAI often translated “master or Lord.” These are primary names for God in the Hebrew Bible. Then there are secondary names derived from the primary names: אֵל עֶלְיוֹן – EL ELYON. EL meaning “high, or up, or strong.” ELYON is the superlative of it and could be translated “the

strongest strong One,” or “The Most High,” higher than all others. “The Most High God.” Then there is אֱלֹהֵי שָׁדַי – EL SHADDAI translated “The Almighty God,” or “The all sufficient God.” SHAD coming from the root meaning “breast.” EL SHADDAI, “The breasted One,” “the nourisher, the provider, the sustainer, the life giver.” This is a very intimate name for God. So there are many names that describe some characteristic of our God.

Matthew explains the meaning of the name “Emmanuel,” while Isaiah does not. The meaning of Emmanuel is “God with us,” but we don’t call Him “God with us” and we don’t call Him Emmanuel. Yet the Lord said He would give Israel a sign so they could recognize the Righteous King when He came. The sign: He will be virgin born and His name shall be called “Emmanuel,” God with us. This is a characteristic; it’s a quality of that individual which is distinct from all others. It sets Him apart for identification purposes.

In Isaiah 7:14 the Lord revealed the exact sign He was going to give Israel in order for them to recognize the Righteous King when He came. **Therefore the Lord himself shall give you a sign; Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.** (KJV) Isaiah 7:14 is quoted in Matthew 1:23, **Behold, a virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Emmanuel, which being interpreted is, God with us.** (KJV)

In Isaiah 9:6 it says, **For unto us a child is born** (perfect humanity), **unto us a son a given** (undiminished deity): **and the government shall be upon his shoulder:** (inherited royalty and ruling power): **and his name shall be called** (unique identity) **Wonderful, Counselor, The mighty God** (EL GIBBOR), **The everlasting Father** (Father of eternity), **The Prince of Peace** (SHAR SHALOM). (KJV) (Emphasis added by the author)

The personal name of God in the Old Testament is JEHOVAH or YEHWAH, translated “LORD” and indicated with all capital letters. This is his personal name. Yet, there are many other names ascribed to Him. While they are used to describe certain characteristics, they are called names.

In the New Testament the personal name of God’s Son is Jesus, Ἰησοῦς – IESOUS, which is a translation of the Hebrew word יֵשׁוּעַ – JESHUA meaning “Savior or deliverer.” In Matthew 1:19-20 the angel told Joseph that Mary was pregnant by means of the Holy Spirit, then in verse 21 he told Joseph, **And she shall bring forth a son, and thou shalt call his name JESUS: for he shall save his people from their sins.** (KJV) (Emphasis added by the author). In this verse we are actually given the meaning of the word “Jesus.” It means “Savior.” The word Christ is technically not a name, it is a title. Χριστός – CHRISTOS means “the chosen One, the Messiah, the One

who rules.” CHRISTOS is a translation of the Hebrew word מָשִׁיחַ – MASHIACH (maw-shee-akh) meaning “Messiah, the chosen One, the One who rules.”

Phil 2:9-11, **Therefore God exalted him to the highest place and gave him the name that is above every name, (10) that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, in heaven and on earth and under the earth, (11) and every tongue confess** (ὁμολογέω – HOMOLOGEO meaning “to acknowledge”) **that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.** (NIV) (Explanation and emphasis given by the author)

Almost universally Bible teachers and Bible commentaries will say that the name that is in view here is “**Jesus.**” But that is not the case. I know it looks that way, it feels that way and we all want it to go that way. But the name which is above every other name is the name “**Lord**” in verse 11. **And every tongue confess** (acknowledge) **that Jesus Christ is LORD...** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author). The Greek word translated “**Lord**” is κύριος – KURIOS meaning “Lord or master” referring to deity. KURIOS is the name which is above every other name. Our Savior is “Lord, Sovereign, Ruler, King and absolute authority.” He humbled Himself by means of His death on the cross; therefore, God the Father has exalted Him and made Him Lord of lords. Acts 2:36, **Therefore let all Israel be assured of this: God has made this Jesus, whom you crucified, both Lord and Christ.** (NIV)

I Cor 8:6, **.....yet for us there is but one God, the Father, from whom all things came and for whom we live; and there is but one LORD (KURIOS), Jesus Christ, through whom all things came and through whom we live.** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Hebrews 1:4 literally says, “Having become more prominent (more superior) than angels, He has inherited a more superior name than they have.”

The name that He has obtained is more prominent than the names of angels and makes what He is going to say superior to what was said in the Old Testament mediated by angels. That name is “**Son.**” I know that some reading this may think, “That’s not a name.” But in the previous paragraphs I have attempted to illustrate the principle of a name being given on the basis of certain characteristics. Just as the word “**Emmanuel**” from Isaiah 7:14 describes a characteristic, so also the word “**Son**” describes a characteristic.

Look at Hebrews 1:5, **For unto which of the angels said he at any time,**

THOU art my Son, this day have I begotten thee? And again, I will be to him a Father, and he shall be to me a Son? (KJV) (Emphasis added by the author)

Not only is Jesus the Son, but in Hebrews 1:8 we will see that Jesus is also God. And there the writer quotes Psalm 45:6-7. Not only is Jesus Christ the Son of God, but He is Deity Himself. Therefore, what Jesus Christ has to say is far superior to what the angels mediated in the Old Testament. The new covenant is far superior than the old covenant. The old covenant was mediated by angels, but Jesus is far superior to angels because He has a “More superior name than they have.” And one of His names is “**Son.**” Another name is God or deity. We will see as we proceed through this book that He also has the names “Lord, Sovereign and Master.” Therefore, what He says supersedes what was said in the Old Testament by the prophets. When we come to Hebrews 2:1 the writer is going to say, “**Therefore, we ought to give the more earnest heed to the things which we have heard, lest at any time we should let them slip.**” (KJV)

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 4: “Having become more prominent (more superior) than angels, He has inherited a more superior name than they have.”

Summary Principles

1. The Ascension and Session of Jesus Christ indicates the Father’s approval of Jesus Christ’s priestly ministry by His death on the cross. He offered Himself as the perfect sacrifice.
2. As the result of the First Advent and the incarnation, Jesus Christ as a resurrected human being became superior to angels when He was seated at the right hand side of God the Father in heaven.
3. The resurrected humanity of Jesus Christ is superior to all angelic creatures, including Satan.
4. Verses 5-13 demonstrate the superiority of Jesus Christ from Old Testament documentation. There will be eight Old Testament passages quoted: six from the book of Psalms, one from II Samuel and one from Isaiah. Jesus Christ was not a priest in the Old Testament, so when we quote Old Testament passages as documentation for something that hadn’t happened yet, we see something unique. God the Holy Spirit did not see fit to quote the Old Testament passages from the Hebrew text, they are quoted from the Septuagint (LXX), the Greek translation of the Old Testament. This denotes a total separation from the Levitical priesthood of the Old Testament. These eight verses are listed in order on page 222.

5. This Old Testament documentation becomes a shock to the Jews living in Jerusalem in 67 AD, and a terror to all the fallen angels and demons.

Expanded Translation of our study

(1) “In many parts (of the Old Testament), and in many different ways in the past, God spoke to our forefathers by means of the prophets. (2) In these last days (of the Jewish Age) He has spoken to us (with finality) in His unique Son whom He has appointed the Heir of all things and through whom He designed the ages (dispensations). (3) Who being the radiance or shining forth of the glory and the exact image of His essence, and maintaining all things by the verbal expression of His power, having Himself accomplished the purging (eliminating) of sins, sat down at the right hand side of the Majesty on high. (4) Having become more prominent (more superior) than angels, He has inherited a more superior name than they have.” (Expanded translation of Robert H. Kreger)

Hebrews 1:5;

For unto which of the angels said he at any time, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee? And again, I will be to him a Father, and he shall be to me a Son? (KJV)

Summary Introduction to verse 5

1. In verses 5-11, the problem is not translation as much as it is explanation.
 2. The writer now proceeds with his argument by asking a rhetorical question expressing the fact that the angels were never given the name “**Son**,” and he follows that by bringing to the attention of his Jewish readers eight quotations from their Old Testament Scriptures.
 3. This passage presents to its Jewish readers the awesome truth of Jesus as God’s incarnate Son. We need to keep in mind that the word “**Son**” is an incarnation title of Christ.
 4. His sonship was anticipated in the Old Testament, Proverbs 30:4, **Who has gone up to heaven and come down? Who has gathered up the wind in the hollow of his hands? Who has wrapped up the waters in his cloak? Who has established all the ends of the earth? What is his name, and the name of his son?** (NIV) (the phrase “**wrapped the waters in his cloak**” refers to God protecting and sustaining the earth)
- Even though His sonship was anticipated in the Old Testament, He did not receive the title of Son until He was born in time with a human body. Prior to His incarnation He was no different from the others in the Godhead.
5. The term “**Son**” refers only to Jesus Christ in His incarnation. In other words, it only refers to His humanity.
 6. Nowhere in the Bible does it speak of the eternal sonship of Christ. When He is spoken of in eternity in Hebrews 1:8, God the Father says to the Son, “**Thy throne, O God, is forever and ever.**” (KJV). When talking about Christ’s eternity, the title “**God**” is used; only when talking about His humanity is He called “Son.”
 7. This brings up a question, didn’t Christ always have a better name? Yes! Then why does it say, “He has inherited a more superior name than they have?” Because He obtained another name. He was always

God, but He became the “**Son.**” He has not always had the title of Son. That is His human title. Eternally He is God, but only in His humanity has He been called Son.

This is an extremely important point, one requiring much study to understand. The truth is not always easy to follow through Scripture. But it is a truth that will come powerfully to our aid when someone comes to our door and says, “Since Jesus is the Son of God, He is obviously eternally inferior to God the Father. Jesus, therefore, is not God; he is less than God, He is only a Son.” That is the teaching of cults, like the Jehovah’s Witnesses.

8. Christ is never called the Son until after His incarnation. Before that He was eternal God. Presently He is eternal God, and glorified humanity. It is, therefore, incorrect to say that Jesus Christ is eternally inferior to God just because He goes under the title of Son. He is not the eternal Son, always subservient to God, always less than God, always under God. The title of Son is an analogy to help us understand Christ’s essential relationship and the submission of His will to that of the Father’s will for the sake of our salvation.

Vs 5: **For unto which of the angels said he at any time, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee? And again, I will be to him a Father, and he shall be to me a Son? (KJV)**

For - γάρ – GAR. This is an epexegetical particle. Someone could write a dissertation for a doctorate on the use of GAR in the New Testament. It is a phenomenal subject. The epexegetical GAR is used to explain further details of the superiority of Jesus Christ in hypostatic union.

I hope you can remember the great thrust of verses 2-4. It is the fact that Jesus Christ is the God-Man. He is the unique individual of all living beings. Many of the things being described are dealing with the hypostatic union with emphasis on His humanity (hypostatic union simply refers to God and man dwelling in the same body.) Therefore, it becomes necessary to document these things from Scripture which existed in the past in the Old Testament.

Unto which - τίνα – TINA. Dative masculine singular of the interrogative pronoun τίς – TIS meaning “which” and introduces a rhetorical question. A rhetorical question is “The asking of a question, not to get an answer, but to expose a condition, to rebuke, to make a point, or to get some desired effect.” Literally, “For to which.”

Of the angels - This refers to the created super beings called angels.

Said he - εἶπέν - EIPEN. Second aorist active indicative third person singular of the verb λέγω - LEGO. Means “to say, to speak, to communicate.” This refers to a spoken communication. There is at least one language among the angels and LEGO indicates that point.

Literally, “For to which of the angels did He say.”

At any time - ποτε - POTE. Enclitic particle of time meaning “once, some time or other, formerly, any time, ever.” Literally, “To which of the angels did He ever say at any time.” And then we have the beginning of a rhetorical question.

This rhetorical question is a quotation. The first of eight quotations. The following passages are used to document from various aspects of the superiority of Jesus Christ in hypostatic union, or Jesus Christ in His humanity over angels.

There is no question with regard to His deity, because in His deity He is infinitely superior to all creatures. In fact, He is the source, the origin of all life and all things. He is the Creator of all things. Jesus Christ as God is infinitely superior to everything. But as man, the writer goes to the Old Testament to demonstrate the fact that Jesus Christ is superior in His humanity to all angelic creatures.

The first Old Testament passage to be quoted is taken from Psalm 2:7 and it contains a part of the divine decrees. The second Psalm is used to quote various aspects of the divine decrees.

Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee?

Thou art my Son - υἱός μου εἶ σύ - HUIOS MOU EI SU.

Art - εἶ - EI. Present active indicative second person singular of the verb εἶμι - EIMI. Verb of absolute state of being. Literally, “You keep on being.”

My Son - υἱός μου - HUIOS MOU. HUIOS means “an adult Son, a mature Son.” MOU is the possessive pronoun. It is a genitive of possession. There is an eternal relationship here between the first and second persons of the Trinity. HUIOS, “an adult Son” refers to Jesus Christ as eternal God, undiminished deity.

Literally, “You are always My Son.” Jesus Christ will always be God and there will never be a time when He won’t be God. But this is a quotation from the

divine decrees, and some may say, “The word Son indicates that He didn’t exist as long as the Father.” But this is what we call the language of accommodation. This is a language used by God the Holy Spirit to teach a truth that finite human beings could not understand otherwise. The word “Father” and “Son” are used to illustrate the functions of the Godhead in the plan of God in the divine decrees. These words are not used to express origin or age or superiority of one over the other. Therefore, the expanded translation “You are always my Son,” tells us that Jesus Christ is always classified as the Son with regard to the function in time in providing our so great salvation.

In the doctrine of divine decrees, the word “Father” is used to refer to the planner. The word “Son” is used to refer to the One who is obedient and carries out that plan. Do not look at the words “Father” or “Son” with reference to age or origin or as one being superior to the other. These words are a part of the language of accommodation rather than a language of chronological sequence. We as human beings think of father and son in terms of sequence. The son cannot exist before the father, the father has to exist first and the son is born into the family of which the father is the source of the son.

Whether you realize it or not you are accustomed to thinking in sequence. Therefore, by thinking in sequence, you will lose what is meant here. Both in the Hebrew and the Greek languages this is not in sequence, but a combination of two persons working a single plan.

When the Bible talks about God the Father and God the Son, it is talking about total and complete equality in all things. God the Father and God the Son both have the same identical essence.

The little verb EIMI, translated “**art**” in the King James Version, indicates that this relationship always existed because there was never a time when all the members of the Trinity did not exist together. All the members of the Trinity put together this fantastic plan for mankind. And in this plan one of them does the sending, one of them goes to execute the plan and goes to the cross and one of them provides the power for its execution and success. Everything in this passage is pointing toward the cross which will be emphasized in the second chapter of this book. Therefore, billions of years ago the cross was planned.

Literally, “You are always My Son.”

This day - σήμερον – SEMERON. This is a Greek adverb and introduces

another concept. SEMERON means “today, or this day.” This specifically refers to the time when this phase of the plan was placed into operation. Keep in mind that this plan was always in the mind of God. But there came a time when it was placed into operation. This adverb refers to the day of the virgin birth, or the day of the incarnation. Galatians 4:4-5, **But when the time had fully come, God sent his Son, born of a woman, born under law, (5) to redeem those under law, that we might receive the full rights of sons.** (NIV)

In proving the superiority of Jesus Christ over angels, inevitably you must start out with His deity. **“You are My Son,”** a quotation from the divine decrees in Psalms 2:7. This is to show that in eternity past, billions and billions of years ago God the Son always existed. There never was a time when the Father existed before the Son or the Son before the Father. There never was a time when both of them did not exist. Since both of them have always existed and there never was a time when they did not exist, it becomes necessary to understand this.

In other words, if you are going to start out proving superiority, start out with what Jesus Christ has always been. Jesus Christ has always been God. He was just as much God as God the Father, **“You are My Son.”** EIMI links the two of them together. **“You are My Son,”** and there never was a time when you were not! And there never was a time when both of them did not co-exist. We must also keep in mind that Jesus Christ created angels. He created mankind, but He must now become a human.

There is no question concerning His superiority in His deity, but in order to start at the proper place, the deity of Jesus Christ is brought into focus first. Jesus Christ is God. Psalms 2:7 was written to prove that Jesus Christ as God is a part of God’s plan. It was designed to prove that Jesus Christ is not only God, and not only a part of God’s plan, but there came a time when He became different from the other members of the Godhead by becoming true humanity. All of this is wrapped up in the divine decrees which existed and were established billions and billions of years ago.

This day comes from the Greek adverb referring to a point of time in history when Jesus Christ became true humanity. Jesus Christ became true humanity at the moment of the virgin birth, and this causes Him to be different from the Father. Now He is the God-Man. Undiminished deity and true humanity in one person forever. But the source of the hypostatic union is still God the Father. The key in understanding this: keep in mind that the names: Father, Son and Holy Spirit are only used for our benefit. The name Father is used because He designed the plan. The name Son is used because He became obedient to the Father and fulfilled the plan. The name Holy Spirit is used with reference to the power in carrying out the plan.

Have I begotten thee - γεγέννηκά GEGENNEKA. Perfect active indicative first person singular of γεννάω – GENNAO. Means “beget, to bring forth, to give birth to, to produce, to be the father of.”

PERFECT TENSE denotes an action that occurs in the past but its results continue forever. This tells us that Jesus Christ will continue forever in the hypostatic union. Jesus Christ will be different from the Father throughout all eternity: He will always be the God-Man. There will never be a time when He will be anything but the God-Man. Therefore, He is different from the Father and the Holy Spirit who are God, but they are not human.

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject produces the action of the verb. God the Father produced the action of being the author of this wonderful plan whereby God the Son became true humanity. This plan is simply called the grace plan of God.

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative) denoting the absolute dogmatic reality of the fact that Jesus Christ, the eternal God, took upon Himself a human body. This refers to the reality of the virgin birth, the reality of the incarnation, the reality of the hypostatic union, the reality of the impeccability of the humanity of Jesus Christ at the point of His birth. He was born without a sinful nature, and He was born without the imputation of Adam’s original sin. Therefore, in His volition, in His free will, He must live a perfect life and refuse to sin for a short time (33 years). During this time everything He did was in the power of the Holy Spirit.

To really have a full understanding of all this you must be aware of two very important doctrines. The doctrine of divine decrees, and the doctrine of the hypostatic union. I am not going to go through these doctrines here, but whenever a verse of Scripture is quoted it must be observed from the standpoint of its context. Psalm chapter two deals with the divine decrees. Psalm 2:7 deals with the divine decrees as related to the hypostatic union.

The quotation from Psalm 2:7 tells us that Jesus Christ is the unique person in the universe. He is different from God the Father in that He is true humanity, He is different from angels because He is the God-Man, He is different from angels in that He is God, He is different from man because He is perfect man and He also is God. No matter how you slice it, no matter how you look at it, no matter what you do with it, you have to come up with the same conclusion: Jesus Christ is not only unique, but He is the most superior of all beings.

Therefore, the very first documentation we have indicates that Jesus Christ always existed as God, but something unique happened, **“this day,”** in a

moment of time: Jesus Christ became a member of the human race. Furthermore, He became a member of the human race without jarring or upsetting His deity, without compromising His deity and without destroying His deity. If He had a true human father, and if He had a normal human conception and birth, then there would be a compromise of deity. Deity would not be true deity. The humanity of our Lord cannot coexist with God apart from the virgin birth. In normal human conception and birth there is the transmission of the sinful nature from the human father to the child. (Gen 5:3; Rom 5:12;) But since Jesus did not have a human father, He did not possess a sinful nature, and, therefore, He was able to have fellowship with God the Father from the moment of His virgin birth. There was only one virgin birth in all of human history, and there will only be one. This is the way Jesus Christ became true humanity without compromising His deity.

Jesus Christ was unique at the moment of His birth, and from that point on His uniqueness is only amplified. That means that if He is unique at birth (and He is), then He will have a unique life, which also means that His death will be unique (in fact, He died twice on the cross: He died a substitutionary spiritual death, and then He died physically. This will be explained as we proceed in our study of Hebrews) All of this also informs us that His resurrection will be unique (He was the firstfruits of those that slept in death, I Cor 15:20). That means from then on everything will be unique: the Ascension, the Session and everything else after that: His intercession at the right hand of the Father, His Second Advent, and His rule on the earth during the 1,000 year kingdom.

Not only is our Savior unique, as He must be, but so is His priesthood, which also makes our priesthood unique. This is the point that will be introduced now.?

Who is our Savior? In eternity past He was God and always will be God. There will never be a time when He won't be God. But He didn't become man until **"this day."** Which refers to the perfect time in human history (Gal 4:4, **But when the time had fully come, God sent his Son, born of a woman, born under law,.....** NIV) God chose the perfect time in human history when He would be revealed to the human race as a baby in a manger in Bethlehem. **"This day"** was planned billions of years ago. A day when God the Father and God the Holy Spirit knew that Jesus Christ, the second person of the Trinity would take upon Himself something that was unique, and after that event (the virgin birth) things would never be the same again in heaven or on the earth. Because on the basis of what Jesus Christ accomplished, men, who are inferior to angels by physical birth, would become superior to angels through the new birth.

God the Father turned the universe upside down the day when Jesus Christ was born. And God the Father knew that when Jesus Christ was born into the world that the time would come (just 33 years later) when all the sins of the entire human race would have to be poured out on Him and that God the Father Himself would have to judge the sins that were placed on God the Son. And when that was accomplished, God turned the world upside down again with this great spiritual victory over Satan. All of this is wrapped up in the documentation found here in our passage.

Not one angel is even close to having what Jesus Christ has. Angels are completely inferior to Jesus Christ in every sense of the word. But this is just the beginning. Wait until we get to the point where angels are to “**worship him.**” (in Heb 1:6).

The God-Man is infinitely superior to angels, even if this was all the documentation we had it would be enough to prove the point, but the Bible is filled with much more information. But our focus here is on the book of Hebrews.

Literally, “I have begotten.”

Thee - σε – SE. Accusative singular of the pronoun σύ – SU referring to Jesus Christ. He is the object of the verb. He was the one who “was begotten.” Psalms 2:7 is so important that it is actually quoted three times in the New Testament.

1. Acts 13:33 where Jesus Christ is the baby in the manger and at the same time eternal God.
2. Hebrews 1:5, our passage, where it is used to emphasize the humanity of Jesus Christ as being superior to all angels.
3. Hebrews 5:5, where it is used to emphasize the priesthood of Jesus Christ as being superior to all priesthods.

In Hebrews 1:5 superiority over all angels is emphasized. But, in Hebrews 5:5 superiority of priesthods is emphasized. Superiority over all other high priests. In other words, Jesus Christ is superior in all things no matter how you look at it.

In Hebrews chapter one He is superior to angels. In Hebrews chapter five He is superior to men. So as a man He is superior to angels and as a man He is superior to all the high priests who have ever lived. He is the most superior person in all of God’s creation.

Literally, “For to which of the angels did He ever say at any time, ‘You are My Son, this day I have begotten You?’”

And again - This introduces a second quotation.

And again - καὶ πάλιν – KAI PALIN. Means “again by repetition, or again by continuation.” Because of the continuative use of the conjunction KAI we know that the second definition is used here. “Again by continuation.” The writer is continuing to quote other Old Testament references. Therefore this introduces another quotation. This time from II Samuel 7:14. Then we have the quote, “**I will be to him a Father, and he shall be to me a Son?**” (KJV)

I will be to him - ἐγὼ ἔσομαι αὐτῷ – EGO ESOMAI AUTO.

I will be - ἔσομαι – ESOMAI. The future active indicative first person singular of the verb εἶμι – EIMI. One of the verbs of absolute state of being. In the first quotation: “You are My Son,” EIMI is in the present active indicative, but in the second quotation, “I will be,” EIMI is in the future active indicative. Why? The rest of this phrase will explain it.

To him - αὐτῷ – AUTO. Dative singular of the intensive and reflexive pronoun αὐτός – AUTOS. This intensive, reflexive pronoun intensifies the meaning here.

Literally, “I will be to Him and only to Him.”

A Father - εἰς πατέρα – PATERA. Accusative masculine singular of the noun πατήρ – PATER, plus the preposition εἰς – EIS and should be translated “for a Father.” I know that doesn’t make very good English, but that is the way it could be translated from the Greek. But I am going to translate this a little differently.

Literally, “I will be a Father to Him and only to Him.”

This is language of accommodation, but it also shows the direction of the incarnation. The incarnation sets up a principle in the language of accommodation.

God the Father is not really a Father, and God the Son is not really a Son. Both of them are eternal God: coequal, coexistent and having identical essence, but two distinct personalities.

The word **Father** is used to indicate the One doing the sending. The word **Son** is used to indicate the One who is being sent and the One who is being

obedient. Therefore, the words Father and Son sets up the principle of authority and the obedience to that authority. Jesus Christ responded to authority before He was glorified in His humanity. No one has ever responded to authority the way Jesus Christ did. Even in His birth He responded to the authority of God the Father. He was obedient and took the form of a human being.

This is a point of doctrine that most people have forgotten over the centuries, and the forgetting of this point has been disastrous in all areas of human endeavors. You cannot have capacity for life until you learn what authority means and how to respond to it. Most people react to authority, but the Bible teaches us to respond to it. Those who react to authority are completely out of the will of God. That is a point of Bible doctrine.

From the birth of Jesus on do you know what the true issue is? Authority! Many people say that freedom is always the issue, but that is not true, because true freedom is impossible without authority. No one is ever born free: everyone is born a slave — a slave in the slave market of sin. The first and greatest thing that can happen to you in life is to realize what authority is before you understand what freedom is. Anyone who does not understand authority can never be saved; therefore, will never get to heaven. Before salvation, the authority of the Word of God and the authority of God must be recognized. Salvation is simply realizing that you can do nothing to save your own soul, and, therefore, you must rely upon the authority of God to do it.

No one is ever born free. True human freedom is the capacity for life under the laws of divine establishment. Bible doctrine is designed by God for all members of the human race, believers and unbelievers, and divine establishment is a part of Bible doctrine. Therefore, the best thing that can happen to you is to be born under authority. Do you remember the first thing that happened to you when you were born? Did you get kissed? No! You got whacked! That should tell you something. There is no greater demonstration of the importance of authority than that.

PRINCIPLE: wherever you see opposition to authority you will see the plan of Satan. He is in the business of undermining authority in all areas of life. From the home, to the schools, to businesses, to the policemen on the street, to the military and even in the churches. Response to authority is what makes the church effective for Jesus Christ. Response to the authority of the Word of God as being taught through the spiritual gift of a pastor-teacher is the first step of anyone's salvation, and later in spiritual growth. Everywhere you turn in life you see the importance of authority and your acceptance to it. Jesus Christ is our prime example of One who

constantly accepted and responded in a positive manner to the authority over Him.

Authority is the great principle of life, not freedom. Freedom without authority is anarchy, and anarchy is self-destruction. You will never have true capacity to really enjoy life without authority, no matter how much freedom you may possess. You cannot have capacity for life until you have authority. Authority must come before freedom. And the only way to keep freedom respectable, true and worthwhile is to have boundaries for it. These boundaries are called authority.

Jesus Christ was born under authority. "Father and Son." Eternal God, but He became a Son.

In the first quotation of our verse taken from Psalms 2:7 **You are my Son. Are** is the present active indicative of the verb EIMI to indicate God being equal with God. Literally, "You keep on being My Son." In eternity past Jesus Christ was God, just as much as the Father was God. But in the second quotation taken from II Sam 7:14, **I will be to him**, indicating from the future tense of EIMI, Jesus would come under the authority of the Father.

And He did this by becoming a human being at the virgin birth. As God He could not come under the authority of the Father because they are equal in all things. As God Jesus Christ cannot be under the authority of any other member of the Godhead, because He is co-eternal and co-existent with them. It is impossible for Him to be under authority as long as He is God. But as a man He comes under the authority of the Father. Therefore, He had to become a man in order to come under the authority of God the Father.

So the present tense of EIMI speaks of Jesus Christ as God, and the future tense of EIMI in the second quotation speaks of Jesus Christ as the God-Man. **"I will be (in the future) a Father, and he will be a Son."** And under that relationship, God the Father says "I have the authority and you must be obedient." **Obedient even to the death of the cross** (KJV Phil 2:8.) And the night before the crucifixion Jesus Christ in the Garden of Gethsemane said, **Father, if it be thy will, let this cup pass from me** KJV Matt 26:39. Notice that He said, **Father**, recognizing the authority of the first person of the Trinity. **Father, if it be possible, let this cup pass from me, nevertheless, not as I will, but as thou wilt.** (KJV) Notice the emphasis of authority here.

Do you know that we would not be saved and there would be no eternal life for us were it not for the principle of authority. In the plan of God and the

Word of God, authority always comes before freedom. Therefore, Jesus Christ became obedient to the point of death, even the death of the cross (Phil 2:8) in order that Gal 5:1 could be fulfilled: **Stand fast, therefore in the liberty wherewith Christ hath made us free....** (KJV) Authority comes before freedom.

Today people believe in freedom above authority. Elevating freedom above authority is a course leading to disaster. Authority above freedom makes everything in life wonderful, from salvation to the freedom of a national entity.

You must have authority before you can have freedom. Freedom is born from authority; authority is not born from freedom. That is why the greatest bulwark for freedom in our country is the military establishment. If the military ever lost the principle of authority, we would lose our freedom.

PRINCIPLE: The greater the discipline and authority of the military, the more secure are our freedoms. A lot of men signed the Declaration of Independence, but they were not the important factor in securing our freedom. It was the men who fought the War for Independence who are the unsung heroes of our freedoms, not those who signed the Declaration of Independence. It is true that there would not have been the determination to fight a war for independence if they hadn't signed that document, but it was the men on the battlefield who actually secured our freedom. And that was accomplished by means of a lot of authority. God has ordained that security only comes to those who are willing to fight for it. That is God's plan, and it will remain God's plan until Jesus Christ returns and sets up His perfect kingdom. Therefore, authority must come before freedom.

Most people will never know what true freedom is until it is taken away from them. But when people fight for freedom, and survive, they come to understand the importance of authority in establishing freedom.

The principle found in II Sam 7:14 is this: Authority comes before freedom. Jesus could not take on humanity and go to the cross until something had been established, and that something was established in eternity past. The first person of the Trinity is the Father, the second person of the Trinity is the Son, and the Son obeys the Father, not visa versa. Therefore, this is language of accommodation in order for us to understand the principle. When Jesus Christ became true humanity, the first person of the Trinity was in charge all the way.

Literally, "For to which of the angels did He ever say at any time, 'You are my Son, this day I have begotten you?' And again 'I will be to him and only to him a Father.'"

There is a great distinction between the two tenses in this one verse of Hebrews 1:5. In the first quotation, taken from Psalms 2:7 the present active indicative of EIMI refers to the eternal existence of Jesus Christ in eternity past. He was and is God. The second quotation, taken from II Sam 7:14, the future active indicative of EIMI refers to Jesus Christ taking on humanity. In other words, this tells us that the fellowship that the first and second persons of the Trinity shared in the past would change and would never be the same again. In eternity past God the Father and God the Son shared a unique relationship. Both were spirit, co-equal, co-eternal and identical in essence. But after the incarnation God the Son took on humanity and became the God-Man. He will always be the God-Man, therefore, the fellowship in the Godhead changed as that one member took on human form. But even though one member took on human form, He still retained all the essence of the Godhead. That is another reason why Jesus Christ is unique.

And he shall be to me a Son?

And he shall be - καὶ αὐτὸς ἔσται – KAI AUTOS ESTAI. First of all we have the connective conjunction KAI, plus the nominative singular of the intensive pronoun AUTOS translated “**he**,” then we have the future active indicative third person singular of the verb εἶμι -EIMI translated “**shall be**.” EIMI is a unique verb in the Koine Greek language, it refers to an action that perpetually exists. In other words, Jesus Christ “shall be and always shall be.”

To me - μοι – MOI. Dative singular of the personal pronoun ἐγώ – EGO referring to God the Father. This is a dative of indirect object giving it great emphasis. It is very important to emphasize the fact what God the Father has been and always will be. He is pleased with God the Son, Jesus Christ. This is taught in Matt 3:17; 17:5; Mark 1:11; Luke 2:22.

A Son - εἰς υἱόν – EIS HUION. First of all we have the preposition EIS plus the accusative masculine singular of the noun υἱός – HUIOS. Means “a son, an adult son.”

The first quotation (Psalms 2:7) documents the superiority of the deity of Jesus Christ over the angels. The second quotation (II Sam 7:14) documents the superiority of the hypostatic union of Jesus Christ over the angels.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 5: “For to which of the angels did He ever say at any time, ‘You are my Son, this day I have begotten you?’ And again, ‘I will be to Him a Father, and He Himself shall be to me a Son?’”

Hebrews 1:6;

And again, when he bringeth in the firstbegotten into the world, he saith, And let all the angels of God worship him.
(KJV)

And again - δὲ πάλιν – DE PALIN. First of all we have the conjunction DE translated “**and**,” plus the adverb πάλιν – PALIN meaning “again by repetition, or again by continuation.” The second definition is used here. “Again by continuation.” The writer is continuing to quote other Old Testament references. So this introduces a new quotation. This third quotation is from Psalms 97:7.

When - ὅταν – HOTAN. This is the first word in the Greek sentence indicating its importance. This is an adverb of time, but here it is used as a temporal conjunction. HOTAN means, “when, whenever, in case of, on the occasion of.”

Literally, “And again, on the occasion when.”

He bringeth - εἰσαγάγει – EISAGAGE. Second Aorist active subjunctive third person singular of the verb εἰσάγω – EISAGO. This is a compound verb, and a very old verb. It is one of the oldest verbs in the Greek language. It goes back to the time of Homer, about 1000 B.C. In Homer’s time it meant “to bring someone into something.” Such as bringing someone into a city, or to bring someone into the temple. In later years other definitions were added: like “to lead, to introduce.”

Here in Hebrews 1:6, it refers to the Second Advent when Jesus Christ is brought back into the world again under what we call “Operation Footstool.”

AORIST TENSE (gnomic). This refers to an action attained. It states the fact of an action, or the fact of an event. The aorist tense expresses an occurrence of an action. This gnomic aorist tells us that the Second Advent, while still future is regarded as fixed in its certainty. It is going to happen, it is definite.

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject, God the Father, produces the action of the verb. The Second Advent of Jesus Christ is a part of the Father’s plan and a part of the Father’s schedule.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: The subjunctive usually expresses potential, but here it is used to indicate an indefinite temporal clause, which means this refers to a future event certain to come, but the time of that event is unknown.

REVIEW OF EXPANDED TRANSLATION BY THE AUTHOR

Vs 1: In many parts (of the Old Testament), **and in many different ways in the past, God spoke to our forefathers by means of the prophets.** This is a glorious reality. God did not have to speak, and if He had not spoken we would be helpless and hopeless. We would only have despair and futility. We would have no direction. We would not know from where we came or where we were going. But God did speak graciously in the past through the prophets.

Vs 2: In these last days (of the Jewish Age) **He has spoken to us** (with finality) **in His unique Son** - His son who completed His work. He completed the mission assigned to Him and then He “sat down.” Which means that He did all that a high priest had to do to satisfy the demands of an infinitely holy God. The Son, **He has appointed the Heir of all things and through whom He designed the ages** (dispensations).

Vs 3: Who being the radiance (or shining forth) **of the glory and the exact image of His essence, and maintaining all things by the verbal expression of His power, having Himself accomplished the purging** (eliminating) **of sins, sat down at the right hand side of the Majesty on high.** In other words, the Son was coronated, the Son was exalted, the Son was enthroned at the right hand side of God the Father. It should be noted that God the Son was always the king in His deity, but this “coronation,” this formal ceremony refers to the promotion of His humanity.

A first century Jew would say, “That is all well and good. You are telling us that God spoke through His Son. But God also spoke in the Old Testament through the prophets. He also used angelic beings, who were the mediators in the giving of the law; therefore, we hold angels in high esteem as mediators. Our entire life cycle revolves around the law, around that body of truth. So if you are going to tell us that what the Son has now spoken is to supersede that which the prophets have spoken, then you must demonstrate to us that the Son is superior to the prophets and the angels, or else, what He said is not superior to what was said by the prophets or mediated by angels.”

Therefore, the writer goes on in verse four and says,

Vs 4: Having become (speaking of the Son) **more prominent** (more superior) **than angels** (because He has been coronated, He has been enthroned at the right hand side of God the Father) **He has inherited a more superior name than they** (than the angels).

Biblical names were given to identify some characteristic, to set an individual apart, to set forth his worth or his glory. **He** (referring to Jesus Christ) **has inherited a more prominent** (more superior) **name**. We will see a series of names being presented, similar to those of Isaiah 9:6-7. In Isaiah chapter nine four names are given: **Wonderful Counselor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father, Prince of peace**. These are all characteristics of the One on whom the government of the entire earth will one day rest. When He rules as the King of kings and Lord of lords He'll be the **Wonderful Counselor**, He'll be the **Mighty God**, He'll be the **Everlasting Father**, He'll be the **Prince of Peace**. These are all characteristics of that One, and the Bible calls them names. Although we do not address Him in those terms normally. Here in verse four He is being presented as being superior to the angels **having become more prominent** (more superior) **than angels**. **He has inherited a more superior name than they have**.

Beginning in verse five and going to the end of chapter one, the writer, in very clear reasoning and logic, goes back to eight Old Testament Scriptures to show the superiority of Jesus Christ over that of angels. For the Jew of the first century, and for the argument to be authoritative and to be accepted, he would have to go back to the Old Testament scriptures to prove his point. Therefore, the writer goes back to the Old Testament, and seven out of these eight quotations will come from the book of Psalms.

Verse four says that **He has a superior name**. The first name I want to call your attention to is the name **"Son."** You may say, "That is not a name," well, it's not a name as we use names today, but it was exactly what a name was in the Bible. **"Wonderful Counselor"** was a name, **"Mighty God"** was a name, **"Everlasting Father,"** was a name, **"Prince of Peace"** was a name. These are all characteristics of God and they describe some attribute. He has a more superior name than the angels, and one of those names given here is the name **"Son."** This is a position of intimacy, a particular relationship. It is one thing to be a servant, but it's another thing to be a Son.

Vs 5: **For to which of the angels did He ever say at any time, "You are My Son. This day I have begotten you?"** (Robert Kreger's expanded translation) This is a quotation from Psalms 2:7. **This day I have begotten you** does not speak of origin, it refers to His position, which is exalted, coronated, enthroned at the right hand side of God the Father.

And again I will be to him a Father, and he shall be to me a Son? This is a quotation from II Samuel 7:14. This is a part of the Davidic Covenant recorded in II Samuel chapter seven, verses 11b-18. God told David that He

would prosper David's descendants and that **I will establish his kingdom.** (13) **He is the one who will build a house for my Name, and I will establish the throne of his kingdom forever.** (14) **I will be his father, and he will be my son....."** (II Samuel 7:12-14) This is one of the many passages that contain a near and far fulfillment. In the near fulfillment the Lord is referring to Solomon, but in the far fulfillment He is referring to the Lord Jesus Christ. Remember, Solomon would die, but this One being referred to would rule and prosper "**forever**" sitting upon the throne of Israel (vs 13). This is referring to the Messianic fulfillment in the person of Jesus Christ. Again the writer of Hebrews is emphasizing that Jesus Christ has a name which is "**more superior**" than the names of the angels, and the name that is emphasized here is the name "**Son.**" We must keep in mind that the name "**Son**" basically refers to the hypostatic union. But, the name "**Son**" can refer to deity, or it can refer to humanity, depending on what is emphasized in each passage.

Vs 6 in the KJV it says **And again, when he bringeth in the firstbegotten into the world** - this is emphasizing His position not His origin. We must keep in mind that His position is that of being exalted, coronated and enthroned at the right hand side of God the Father. Jesus Christ is the firstbegotten, or the only begotten.

he saith, and let all the angels of God worship him - this is a quotation from Psalms 97:7 and Deut 32:43 in the Septuagint. We have seen that He has a name that is greater than the angels and that name is "**Son.**" And when He came into the world, the angels were commanded by God to worship the Son.

Vs 7: (KJV) **And of the angels he saith, Who maketh his angels spirits, and his ministers a flame of fire** - this is a quotation from Psalm 104:4. The word for spirits is πνεύματα – PNEUMATA, which is also the word for wind and air. The thrust of Psalm 104:4, and what is intended here, is that the angels are like the wind, and the angels are like fire. Wind and fire are servants; they are to do men good if used properly. The angels, in contrast to Jesus Christ being born a "**Son,**" are intended by God to be like the wind and like the fire. They are to be servants.

In verses 8-9 we see a second name for Jesus Christ.

He has a more prominent (more superior) **name.** The first name we saw was "**Son.**" The second name we will see is "**God.**" The Son is also deity. That is a very important point.

Vs 8: (KJV) **But unto the Son he saith, Thy throne, O God, is for**

ever and ever: a scepter of righteousness is the scepter of thy kingdom - this is a quotation from Psalm 45:6.

What is righteousness? Righteousness is right-ness. Right-ness is conformity to a standard. The standard of God Himself. Why is the world in such confusion and turmoil today? Because there is no standard. Once the world says, "There is no God," it takes away the standard of right and wrong. The only true standard for existence is God. God is holy, God is just, God is true, God is loving and God is gracious.

The greatest paradox of all the ages is this: How can a holy God, who is a consuming fire, redeem unholy and totally depraved man without becoming contaminated with man's unholiness and compromising His own perfection? That is the theme of the book of Romans. In Romans 1:16, the apostle Paul says, **I am not ashamed of the gospel, because it is the power of God for the salvation of everyone who believes: first for the Jew, then for the Gentile.** (NIV) In other words, this salvation that comes from God through Jesus Christ is universal. It is for everyone. In that body of truth, in the gospel the **"righteousness from God is revealed"** (Rom 1:17, NIV) The great issue was how could a holy God redeem unholy depraved man without becoming tainted with man's unholiness. The only way it could be done was through Calvary, where the One who was spotless and pure died for all who were blemished, impure and totally depraved.

PRINCIPLE: Jesus had to conform to the standard of God's righteousness in redeeming us. He Himself had to conform, and the writer has that concept in view when he writes in verses 8-9 of Hebrews chapter one, **But unto the Son he saith, Thy throne, O God, is forever and ever: a scepter of righteousness is the scepter of thy kingdom.** (KJV)

Vs 9: (KJV) **Thou hast loved righteousness** - demonstrated in His virgin birth, demonstrated in His sinless life, demonstrated in His substitutionary spiritual death and His physical death, demonstrated by the fact that He satisfied God. Therefore, God raised Him from the dead.

Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity; therefore, God, even thy God, hath anointed thee - verse nine is completing verse eight. Verse nine is demonstrating that it was the Father who was speaking to the Son.

In verse eight it is the Father speaking quoting from Psalm 45:6, (KJV) **But unto the Son he saith** - God the Father is saying to God the Son, Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever. Then in verse 9 we see why.

Vs 9: (KJV) **Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity;**

therefore, God, (God the Father) even thy God, hath anointed thee (God the Son) with the oil of gladness above thy fellows. (KJV) (Explanations provided by the author) Oil in the Bible is used as a type, an illustration, an analogy or as an object lesson of the Holy Spirit of God. Consistently, through the Bible, oil is used to portray the Holy Spirit.

In the Old Testament there were three primary offices for the Jews: there were men who were prophets, there were men who were priests and there were men who were kings. The prophet was a man who basically had his back to God as he was facing the people. He said, "Thus saith the Lord," because the prophet was God's spokesman to the people. The priest on the other hand was the people's representative before a holy God. Therefore, the priest had his back to the people and was facing God representing the people. The king was God's vice regent ruling over the children of Israel in civil affairs. But one man never held more than one office. It should be noted that even though David prophesied, he never held the office of prophet. And while Melchizedek was both a king and a priest, he was not a Jew so did not qualify under any Jewish system of titles.

Whenever a man was appointed to any one of those three respective offices, there was always an anointing with oil. Oil representing the Holy Spirit was placed on his head. In the case of the prophets of Israel God commanded Elijah to anoint Elisha with oil in the day of apostasy and negative volition. Elisha was still a prophet of God even though the majority of people were negative to divine truth. He was anointed for identification. In the case of the priests of Israel, the sons of Aaron, the Levites, when they ascended to the priesthood a little dab of oil was placed on their heads. That spoke of divine identification and divine enablement. In the case of the kings of Israel, Saul and David were anointed by Samuel the prophet. Solomon was anointed with oil by Zadok the high priest in I Chron 1:39. So there were prophets, priests and kings, and they were always anointed with oil. Each had a little dab placed on his head, except for the high priest.

There was only one high priest at a time. And that one high priest was the only one allowed to go into the presence of God representing the nation of Israel, and then on only one day in the year, the Day of Atonement. On that one important Day, and after he had accomplished everything in the prescribed manner, by cutting the throat of an animal and draining its blood into a bowl, he took the blood behind the last veil in the tabernacle and later the temple and sprinkled the blood on the mercy seat in the Holy of Holies representing the entire nation of Israel. Since the high priest was the only one allowed in the Holy of Holies once a year, and since he was the authority over all the other Levitical priests, he did not have a little dab of oil placed on

his head like the others (prophets, priests and kings). His was the highest office in all of Israel, because he went into the presence of God representing the nation. Therefore, he had oil poured over his head. So much oil was used that it ran down into his eyes, into his mouth, over his face and beard, down the neck and shoulders, down the arms and over the hands, over the chest and belly, down the thighs and legs all the way down to his feet and toes. The high priest was saturated with oil because he represented the entire nation to God and stood in the presence of God.

In Hebrews 1:9 we are told that Jesus Christ was anointed by God the Father with the **oil of gladness**. Why is it called **the oil of gladness**? Because within the threefold office system of Israel: the prophet, the priest and the king, all three of these offices merged together in Him. That is why He is called "The anointed One." The word "Christ" means "the anointed One." There were prophets and priests and kings in Israel, but He alone is the prophet, priest and king in One person. He is the anointed One.

He was anointed with the oil of gladness - because through His prophetic ministry, and His priestly ministry, and His kingly ministry He will meet every single need of the human heart. Therefore, it is called "**the oil of gladness**," the oil of exultation, praise and extreme joy.

When the Son was anointed by God the Father He did not receive the literal oil like the Old Testament men did. The oil used in the Old Testament was only a shadow or picture of the Holy Spirit. The Son, Jesus Christ, received the real thing. He received the reality. He received the Holy Spirit in all His power.

We know that the Holy Spirit came upon Mary and fertilized one of her ova to bring about a virgin conception, which resulted in the virgin birth, "Luke 1:35, **"The angel answered, 'The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you. So the holy one to be born will be called 'the Son of God.'**" (NIV) In Matthew 1:20 an angel appeared to Joseph in a dream and said,**"Joseph son of David, do not be afraid to take Mary home as your wife, because what is conceived in her is from the Holy Spirit."** But for the next 30 years nothing is said concerning the Holy Spirit in the life of Jesus. It is not until the time He was baptized by John the baptist that the Bible speaks of the Holy Spirit coming upon Jesus. Matt 3:16-17, **As soon as Jesus was baptized, he went up out of the water. At that moment heaven was opened, and he (John) saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove and lighting on him. (17) And a voice from heaven said, 'This is my Son, whom I love; with him I am well pleased.'**" (NIV) Mark 1:9-11, **At that time Jesus came from Nazareth in Galilee and was baptized by John in the Jordan. (10) As Jesus was coming up out of the water,**

he (John) saw heaven being torn open and the Spirit descending on him like a dove. (11) And a voice came from heaven: "You are my Son, whom I love; with you I am well pleased." (NIV) Luke 3:21-22, When all the people were being baptized, Jesus was baptized too. And as he (Jesus) was praying, heaven was opened (22) and the Holy Spirit descended on him in bodily form like a dove. And a voice came from heaven: 'You are my Son, whom I love; with you I am well pleased.'" (NIV).

In each of the synoptic gospels of Matthew, Mark and Luke, it is recorded that the voice of God the Father spoke from heaven saying, **"This is my Son, whom I love; with him I am pleased."** (NIV) What was anointing for? It was for identification purposes. This is My prophet, this is My priest, this is My king. He would be identified before the congregation when the oil was placed on his head. Now, in the case of the Lord Jesus Christ, there is a voice out of heaven that says, **"This is my Son, whom I love; with him I am well pleased."** You had better listen to what He has to say.

Each synoptic gospel writer recorded that the Spirit of God came upon Him at the time of His water baptism. All three saw the Holy Spirit coming **"like a dove."** The dove is another picture of the Holy Spirit. The record of the Holy Spirit coming upon Jesus at the age of 30 is a public testimony of His being anointed with the Holy Spirit by God the Father.

There was no public ministry of our Lord until after His anointing with the Holy Spirit at the age of 30. Because in Judaism, no rabbi could begin a public ministry until he reached the age of 30. Jesus was a rabbi, He was now 30 years old, and the Spirit of God came upon Him for identification and for empowering.

After He was empowered, the Spirit of God immediately led Him out into the Judean desert for 40 days of confrontations with Satan. All the great men of God in the Bible spent a time of testing in the desert: Moses for 40 years (Exodus 2:11-3:3; compared with Acts 7:27-30), Paul for three years, (Gal 1:17-18) and Jesus for 40 days (Matt 4:1-2).

Immediately after His testing He left the Judean desert and made His way up into Galilee to Nazareth. That was His home town. In other words, He went home. Then we are told that it was on the sabbath day that He went to the synagogue in Nazareth like any good Jew would. And they asked Him to come up and read from the Scriptures of Israel.

It is very important to understand that the synagogue readings were prescribed. The readings were set up a year in advance as to what would be read on any given sabbath. The scroll for that sabbath was brought to Him,

and it was the scroll of Isaiah. The scroll was already opened to the prescribed place to be read on that particular day. He did not look up any specific text, He read what was already prescribed to read. In the infinite wisdom, planning and timing of God, the Scripture was to be presented and to be fulfilled. Therefore, He read, **The Spirit of the Lord is on me, because he has anointed me.....** (with the phrase *“the Spirit of the Lord has anointed me,”* this was properly understood to involve three things: anointed Me as prophet, anointed Me as priest and anointed Me as king). After reading the prescribed passage, Luke 4:20 says, **Then he rolled up the scroll, gave it back to the attendant and sat down. The eyes of everyone in the synagogue were fastened on him, (21) and he began by saying to them, “Today this scripture is fulfilled in your hearing.”** (NIV) In other words, He was saying, “I am the fulfillment of this text. I am the prophet, I am the priest and I am the king. I am the one who can meet every need of the human heart.

Jesus knew men so well, therefore, He said in Luke 4:23, **“.....”Surely you will quote this proverb to me: ‘Physician, heal yourself!.....** (NIV) Do you know why He said that? Because He just told them “I can heal you!” He was not emphasizing physical healing, but spiritual healing. He was actually saying, “I can bring you into a proper relationship with the Sovereign of the universe, because I am the prophet, priest and king. I can meet every need of the human heart. This Scripture has been fulfilled before you today!” But they rejected Him and His words, and they took Him out and attempted to throw Him off the cliff, but He escaped from them and walked away. There is no record of Him ever going back to Nazareth again.

After this incident in Nazareth He then began to call His disciples. He began calling His disciples because He was a rabbi. A rabbi is a teacher, and a teacher needs students. He began to call His disciples to train them for the ministry.

Hebrews 1:9 says **Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity; therefore God, even thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows.** (KJV) There were many prophets, priests and kings. But He was the only prophet, priest and king all rolled up into one. He was the only One who could meet all the needs of the human heart in both time and eternity.

Then in verses 10, 11 and 12 we are introduced to a third name. In verse four it says that **“He inherited a more excellent name than the angels.”** In verse five we saw the name **“Son.”** In verse eight we saw the name **“God.”** And now in verse ten we see the name **“Lord,”** meaning “Sovereign, master, deity.”

Vs 10: **And, thou, Lord, in the beginning hast laid the foundations of the earth; and the heavens are the works of thine hands:** (KJV)

Vs 11: **They** (creation) **shall perish, but thou remainest** (He'll outlive it all, forever); **and they all** (creation) **shall wax old as doth a garment;** (KJV)

Vs 12: **And as a vesture shalt thou fold them up** (creation), **and they shall be changed** (the new heaven and the new earth of Rev 21); **but thou art the same, and thy years shall not fail.** (KJV)

He has a more excellent name—Son, God and Sovereign.

Vs 13: **But to which of the angels said he at any time, Sit on my right hand until I make thine enemies thy footstool?** (KJV) This is a quotation from Psalm 110: 1.

Vs 14: About the angels, the writer says, **Are they not all ministering spirits** (isn't that their position? Isn't that their job?) **sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation?** (KJV) This means you, if you are born again, if you have believed in Jesus Christ as your personal Savior, then you are an heir of salvation.

The angels are amazing creatures, they are glorious beings, and thank God for the angelic race of beings, because they are servants of all those who are members of the family of God through faith in Jesus Christ.

Now I will go back to verse six and exegete the passage I just summarized.

Vs 6: **And again, when he bringeth in the firstbegotten into the world, he saith, And let all the angels of God worship him.** (KJV)

So far in our study we have translated the first part of verse six. It literally says, "And on the occasion when He again introduces."

In the first two Old Testament quotations we have seen Jesus Christ introduced for the first time in His incarnation. Now here in verse six we see Him introduced a second time, referring to His second advent.

The firstbegotten - πρωτότοκον – PROTOTOKON. Accusative masculine singular of the noun πρωτότοκος – PROTOTOKOS. Means "the firstborn, the chief one, the head one, the one to rule."

Many sects and cults (like the Jehovah Witnesses and the Mormons) claim that this verse shows us that Jesus Christ is a created being. They claim that because it says here, “He is the firstborn.” They say that He was born like all the rest of us and that He had a beginning. Therefore He cannot be God. But this type of conclusion comes only from a lack of scholarship, and from a lack of study from the original languages. Here, we see again a problem with the King James Version. In today’s English, the King James Version does not fit. It can be very misleading.

The word “**firstborn**” PROTOTOKOS has nothing to do with time. It refers to position. It is not a description, but a title. It does not refer to a literal “firstborn” individual, but it refers to “the chief One.” “The firstborn” is a term used by Paul in Colossians 1:15 and by the writer of Hebrews here referring to the Son of God, Jesus Christ. The term speaks of priority to all creation and sovereignty over all creation. Colossians 1:15 says, “**He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn over all creation.**” Then in verses 16-17 Paul describes further the definition of “firstborn.” “**For by him all things were created: things in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or powers or rulers or authorities; all things were created by him and for him. (17) He is before all things, and in him all things hold together.**” (NIV)

In the King James Version of John 3:16 the term “**Only begotten**” is from the Greek word μονογενής – MONOGENES means “uniquely born,” and describes the unique relationship of the Son to the Father in His divine nature. The “**firstbegotten**,” or “firstborn” (PROTOTOKOS) describes the relation of the risen Messiah in His glorified humanity to man.

The concept here in our passage is associated with the term “firstborn,” because in the Old Testament the oldest son was usually the heir of the father’s entire estate. This brings us to the principle of the “firstborn” inheritance. The one who was the firstborn of a family inherited three things:

1. RULERSHIP, or sovereignty: The firstborn son of the family became the ruler of the family after the death of the father. Jesus Christ, as the firstborn, is the ruler or sovereign at the Second Advent.
2. PRIESTHOOD: In the Old Testament the father was the spiritual leader of the family. When he died the “firstborn” took over that responsibility. Jesus Christ is the High Priest forever after the order of Melchizedek. This will be introduced in Hebrews chapter five.
3. DOUBLE PORTION: In the Old Testament the “firstborn” son inherited

the double-portion, which meant that he obtained all the wealth, even the part that would normally go the other heirs. This was called inheriting the double portion. Jesus Christ as the firstborn is the Heir of all things, including all angels and all regenerate mankind.

In the Old Testament the first son to be born was not always the “firstborn.” Esau, for instance, was older than Jacob, but Jacob was technically the “firstborn,” the PROTOTOKOS because he inherited all of the family wealth. Not because he cheated Esau, but because God chose him to inherit the family’s wealth even while he was in his mother’s womb (Gen 25:23; Rom 5:12;). It should be noted that in life Jacob became a believer in the Lord, while Esau did not.

Genesis 49:3 gives us a good description of the meaning of “firstborn.” **“Reuben, you are my firstborn, my might, the sign of my strength, excellent in honor, excelling in power.”** (NIV) “Might, strength and power” describe the meaning of “firstborn.” It is not a word for first in time, but it is a word for “right and authority.” It should be noted that Reuben lost his firstborn blessings because of a heinous sin. He had sex with his stepmother (Gen 49:4). Therefore, his “firstborn” blessings were distributed among his brothers. The right of rulership was given to his brother Judah (Gen 49:10). The right of priesthood was given to his brother Levi (Exodus 28:1). The double portion was given to Joseph (Gen 49:22). The double portion given to Joseph referred to his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh, who formed an extra tribe in Israel. Since God has always known the end from the beginning (Isaiah 46:10), He knew that Esau would be an unbeliever and would not be qualified to receive the firstborn blessings. Only the sons of Jacob, Esau’s believing twin brother, would inherit these blessings.

Jesus Christ is the supreme **“firstborn,”** the supreme PROTOTOKOS, possessing the supreme right to rule as a Son. Therefore, these passages do not refer to Jesus Christ’s birth as such, but they refer to His sovereignty.

Jesus Christ is called **“The head of the body, the church; he is the beginning and the firstborn from among the dead”** (Col 1:18; NIV) Jesus as the “firstborn from the dead” refers to Jesus being the first one of the human race to be honored and glorified in resurrection. This refers to Jesus Christ as being the most honored One, the most dignified One, the highest One, the most powerful One. Jesus Christ is superior to all.

Therefore, the use of the word PROTOTOKOS, the “firstborn” refers to Jesus Christ coming to earth at His Second Advent. He isn’t born at the Second Advent when He comes. He will be riding a white horse (which represents a great military victory. Roman generals always rode white horses when they came home victorious). So Jesus Christ will be returning as a victor at His Second Advent, and when he returns He will kill millions of people in battle.

Literally, “But on the occasion when He (God the Father) again introduces (at the second advent) the Firstborn (the Chief One, Jesus Christ).”

Into the world - εἰς τὴν οἰκουμένην – EIS TEN OIKOUMENEN. First of all we have the preposition EIS, plus the accusative feminine singular of the noun οἰκουμένη – OIKOUMENE. Means “inhabited earth.” The common Greek word for world is κόσμος – KOSMOS. But that word is not used here, instead the writer uses OIKOUMENE. At the time of writing this word was used to refer to the emperor of the Roman Empire. It was so used for Nero. Therefore, Christ was not to be the “firstborn” on the earth in the sense of becoming the next emperor, but the “firstborn,” or “Chief One, the most honored One” of the earth in the future. He will return to function on the earth as the Chief Monarch, the King of kings and the Lord of lords.

Literally, “But on the occasion when He (God the Father) again introduces the Firstborn (the Chief One) to the civilized world.”

He saith - λέγει – LEGEI. Present active indicative third person singular of the verb λέγω – LEGO. Means “to say, to speak, to declare.” This introduces the third quotation taken from Psalm 97:7, which gives the documentation that angels worship Jesus Christ. Therefore, Christ as the returning King is superior to all angels.

Jesus Christ was superior when He came the first time, but He is also superior when He returns. He is superior in both of His advents.

Literally, “But on the occasion when He (God the Father) again introduces the firstborn (The Chief One, Jesus Christ) into the civilized world, He says.”

Now we have the documentation from Psalm 97:7 as quoted from the Greek Old Testament, the Septuagint.

And let all the angels of God worship him -

Worship - προσκυνήσάτωσαν – PROSKUNESATOSAN. First Aorist active imperative third person plural of the verb προσκυνέω – PROSKUNEO. Means “to fall down and worship, to do reverence or homage by kissing the hand, to do reverence by prostration, to adore, to worship.” This is a compound: The preposition PROS meaning “to, toward or face to face with,” KUNEO meaning “to kiss.” PROSKUNEO literally means “kissing face to face.” Kissing face to face means to worship. This verb connotes “homage, adoration or worship.” This Greek word is derived from a Persian custom of showing homage by kissing the feet or the hem of the robe of a king. It also refers to kissing the hand of a sovereign.

True worship recognizes the absolute authority of Jesus Christ. He started out completely under authority. At the Second Advent He is the authority, and not just for mankind, but also for the entire angelic realm. At the Second Advent Jesus Christ will slaughter the enemy at Armageddon, and all the angelic creatures will be commanded to worship Him. Angels must worship a man who has just slaughtered over two million of the enemy.

AORIST TENSE (constative), which views the action of the verb in its entirety in one point of time. This takes all of the points of time when the angels were commanded to worship Him and places them in one point of time when viewing the action of worship. The elect angels were commanded to worship Jesus Christ in the past when they made the choice not to follow Satan in rebellion. This is recorded in Deut 32:43 in the Septuagint. But in the future all the angels, including the fallen angels, will be commanded to worship Him.

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject produces the action of the verb. Angels produce the action of worship.

IMPERATIVE MOOD (mood of direct command), the angels were commanded to worship Jesus Christ.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 6: “But on the occasion when He (God the Father) again introduces the firstborn (the Chief One, Jesus Christ at the Second Advent) into the civilized world He says (Deut 32:43 in the Septuagint) “and all the angels of God worship Him.” The writer is quoting from the Septuagint, not the Hebrew text. The Septuagint Greek (250 BC) is a little different from the Hebrew Masoretic text, compiled in 1,000 AD.

This again demonstrates the superiority of Jesus Christ. This is a command given to angels. But this command will not be completely fulfilled until the Second Advent of Jesus Christ. At the present time angels do not understand the entire picture well enough to give the Son full worship. The

Old Testament prophets had a similar difficulty in understanding the full meaning of what they had written. They were inspired and led by the Holy Spirit, but in many cases they did not fully understand the message they were given.

I Peter 1:11, **trying to find out the time and circumstances to which the Spirit of Christ in them was pointing when he predicted the sufferings of Christ and the glories that would follow.** (NIV) Then in verse 12 Peter goes on and explains,

I Peter 1:12, **It was revealed to them that they were not serving themselves but you, when they spoke of the things that have now been told you by those who have preached the gospel to you by the Holy Spirit sent from heaven. Even angels long to look into these things.** (NIV)

The angels were looking to see the things that would not be understood until Christ came, the gospel was preached, and the Holy Spirit manifested. In fact, these are mysteries into which the angels still **“long to look into.”** They still do not understand it. Perhaps the angels around the throne do, but the vast angelic creation evidently is not able to discern everything. Angels have a remarkable intelligence, but they are not omniscient. “When God again brings His firstborn (His Chief One) into the world He will say to the angels,” in effect, “Now you have the entire picture, and your worship can be full and complete.”

Rev 5:11-12, **Then I looked and heard the voice of many angels, numbering thousands upon thousands, and ten thousand times ten thousand. They encircled the throne and the living creatures and the elders. (12) In a loud voice they sang: ‘Worthy is the Lamb, who was slain, to receive power and wealth and wisdom and strength and honor and glory and praise!’”** (NIV) Here is angelic worship! Christ is getting ready to come again and to take the earth for Himself. In Rev 5:1 the Father is pictured with the title deed to the earth (the little scroll), and those around the throne are saying (vs 5:2), **“.....Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?”** (NIV) Then one of the elders says in Rev 5:5, **“....’Do not weep! See, the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has triumphed. He is able to open the scroll and its seven seals.’”** (NIV) Jesus Christ, the Lamb, then takes the scroll. As He is about to unroll the scroll, break its seals, administer judgments and take possession of the earth, the angels say, “It’s all clear now!” And the countless millions of them from all over heaven burst forth in praise, joined by all other creatures of the universe. Rev 5:13-14, **Then I heard every creature in heaven and on earth and under the earth and on the sea, and all that is in them, singing: “To him who sits on the throne and to the Lamb be praise and honor and glory and power, for ever and ever!”** (14) **The four living creatures said, “Amen,” and the elders fell**

down and worshiped. (NIV). The word for “**worship**” is PROTOTOKOS, the same word that is found in Heb 1:6. This speaks of His second coming, when He will be revealed in His full glory as the “**Son,**” as the PROTOTOKOS, the “Firstborn (the Chief One).” The angels will finally see and understand it all as they see Him as King of kings and Lord of lords.”

The angels have been on a learning spree for almost 2,000 years. Learning more about their Creator and Lord than they ever knew before. God is doing things the angels never dreamed that God would do. That should be a lesson to us. If the angels are still learning new things after 2,000 years, then the short time on earth that we have (30, 40, 50, 60, 70 or even 90 years), we will only be able to learn a fraction of what God’s plan really involves. Which means, in the future, in our resurrection bodies, we will still be learning and standing in awe of the Great God and Savior of the universe and the great plan He has devised.

In volume II page 21 of Chafer’s Systemic Theology he says, “The birth, life, death, resurrection, and ascension of Christ were to the angels stupendous realities. It is of no small consequence that, as stated by the Apostle, Christ while here on earth ‘was seen by angels’ (I Tim 3:16). Their interest in, and devotion to the Lord of glory is measured to some degree by the worship they have offered Him from their creation to the present hour. Only feebly does the most spiritual of saints anticipate what it will be to look directly and unendingly upon the face of the Lord of glory. The response that will be awakened in the heart of man — enlarged as to its capacity beyond measure — as he views His Creator and Redeemer cannot be foreseen; but such has ever been the experience of the angels. They behold the Lord without a veil between.”

In Dr Chafer’s Systematic Theology, he quotes from Dr William Cooke’s book of Christian theology: “How constant their attendance on the Incarnate Savior during his mysterious life amongst men! At his birth they are his heralds, and with songs exultant announce the glad tidings to mankind. In his temptation they minister to him; in his agonies they succour him; on his resurrection they are the first to proclaim his triumph; on his ascension they come to escort him to the mediatorial throne; in his glorified state they render him supreme homage as their Lord; and when he returns to judge the world they will form his retinue! What sublime thoughts would be suggested, what emotions of wonder and joy would be excited, by the scenes they witnessed on earth and still witness in heaven, in reference to Christ, his two-fold nature, and his great redeeming work. *God incarnate!* This was new to them.

They had seen the Son in his Deity; but never till now enshrined in humanity. What amazing condescension! *Obeys his own law as if he were a mere creature, and in the attitude of a servant!* This was new. They had seen him as the governor of the universe; but never till now as a subject! *Encountering Satan in conflict and prolonged temptation!* This was new. They had seen him frown the arch-rebel from his presence and hurl him to perdition; but never till now submitting to be tempted by him whose subtilty and power had seduced myriads to eternal ruin *Suffering the scorn and reproach of sinful men!* This was new. They had seen myriads of happy spirits worship, adore, and love him; but never till now had they seen him personally insulted, reproached, and maltreated by his creatures. *Groaning in Gethsemane, and crucified between two thieves, and dying as a sacrificial victim!* This was new.

They had seen him supremely happy and glorious; but to see him agonize, to hear that dying wail, and to behold him as a bloody corpse, and all this to save the world which had revolted from him! What mysterious love! *To see him, after all this, enthroned and glorified in human nature.* This was a new fact in the moral history of the universe. The whole scenes were full of interest, wonder, and mystery; a gradation of wonders rising in succession, until they culminated in the permanent presence of the God-Man, resplendent with a glory that fills the heaven of heavens. Here were chapters of instruction for angelic minds to ponder; here were developments of hidden truths; here were discoveries of Divine perfections, never known before; and still unfolding in brighter effulgence as ages roll on!"

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSES 1-6; "In many parts (of the Old Testament), and in many different ways (in the past), God spoke to our forefathers by means of the prophets."

(2) "In these last days (of the Jewish Age), He (God the Father) has spoken to us (with finality) in His unique Son (Jesus Christ), whom He has appointed the Heir of all things, and through whom He (God the Father) designed the ages (dispensations)."

(3) "Who (Jesus Christ) being the radiance or shining forth of the glory and the exact image of His (God the Father's) essence, and maintaining all things by the verbal expression of His power, having Himself accomplished the purging (eliminating) of sins, sat down at the right hand side of the Majesty on High."

(4) "Having become more prominent (more superior) than angels, He has inherited a more superior name than they have."

(5) “For to which of the angels did He (God the Father) ever say at any time, ‘You are My Son, this day I have begotten you?’ And again, ‘I will be to Him (Jesus Christ) and only to Him a Father, and He Himself shall be to me a Son?’”

(6) “But on the occasion when He (God the Father) again introduces the firstborn (the Chief One, Jesus Christ, at the second advent) into the civilized world He says, ‘And let all the angels of God worship him.’”

Hebrews 1:7;

And of the angels he saith, Who maketh his angels spirits, and his ministers a flame of fire. (KJV)

Verse seven gives us the fourth quotation from the Old Testament. It is from Psalm 104:4.

And of the angels he saith - The word “**of**” is mistranslated and can lead to confusion and misunderstanding.

Of - πρὸς – PROS. Preposition plus the accusative case means “to, toward, unto, with regard to, concerning, with respect to, with reference to, face to face with.”

Literally, “And to the angels.”

He saith - λέγει – LEGEI. Present active indicative third person singular of the verb λέγω – LEGO. Means “to say, to talk, to communicate by talking.” This quotation is from Psalm 104:4.

Who maketh his angels spirits - This is not correct. The Greek is a little different.

Who maketh - ὁ ποιῶν – HO POION. Present active participle nominative masculine singular of the verb ποιέω – POIEO. Means “to make, to form, to construct, to create, to establish, to accomplish, to do.” Plus the definite article HO, which is used as a pronoun here.

Literally, “And to the angels He says, ‘The One making His angels spirits.’”

He is not making His angels spirits at the present time, but the One speaking is the One who did make His angels spirit beings. In other words, Jesus Christ created angels, and when He did He made them spirit beings. Jesus Christ as the Creator of all things is found in Colossians 1:16, **For by him all things were created, visible and invisible, whether thrones or powers or rulers or authorities; all things were created by him and for him. (NIV)**

His angels - ἄγγελους αὐτοῦ – AGGELOUS AUTOU. First of all we have the accusative masculine plural of the noun ἄγγελος – AGGELOS meaning “messenger, angel.” Then we have the intensive pronoun αὐτός – AUTOS used as a possessive pronoun, “**His**.” Jesus Christ is superior to angels because of His nature. The Holy Spirit shows the basic difference between the nature of angels and that of the Son. It says in this verse that

“He made (created, constructed) **His angels.**” Since Jesus Christ created the angels, obviously He is superior to them. Not only were they created by Him, but they are **“His”** possession. **“His angels.”**

Literally, “And to the angels He says, “The One making (creating) His angels.”

Spirits - πνεύματα – PNEUMATA. Accusative neuter plural of the noun πνεῦμα – PNEUMA. Means “wind, air in motion, breath, spirit.” Angels have a spirit essence. He made the essence of angels. Angels are called “spirits” in I Peter 3:19. It should be noted that most of the references to angels being spirit beings refers to fallen angels. But as spirit beings they are invisible. But the word PNEUMA, as it is used here has a little different connotation. In the context of our passage the writer is talking about servants. Therefore, the concept of servitude should be a factor when interpreting this verse.

PNEUMA means “wind, air in motion.” The wind has been a servant to man for many thousands of years. Cooling him when he is warm, separating chaff from the grain, and driving the ships across the sea. Therefore, just as the angels are spirits, they are like the wind, they are servants. Not only are they servants, but they were created to be servants. This is a principle that liberalism rejects. Liberalism is a Satanic policy that rejects most of the teachings of the Word of God. That is why liberalism is anti-Christian.

Jesus Christ is the Creator of the angels. At the end of verse six we saw that the angels “worship him” as a superior being. He is the God-Man. And they recognize that He is superior, even in His humanity. Then in verse seven He is “face to face” with the angels and He tells them what He has done. He has created them to be servants. Not only is Jesus Christ superior in all ways, but He actually created the angels to be servants. That is their calling in life, that is their occupation, that is their God-given gift, that is their job.

PRINCIPLE: If angels, the direct creation of God, were created to be servants, then anyone who believes that servitude is below the dignity of man is full of arrogance and ignorance of Biblical truth. Not only were the angels created to be servants, but our Lord’s earthly ministry was one of servitude. Therefore, our earthly life is to be one of servitude.

And his ministers a flame of fire -

Ministers - λειτουργοὺς – LEITOURGOUS. Accusative masculine plural of the noun λειτουργός – LEITOURGOS. In ancient Greece this word was used of “a person of property who performed a public duty or service to the state at his own expense.” This word means “servant.”

A flame of fire - πυρὸς φλόγα – PUROS PHLOGA. PUROS is the genitive singular of πῦρ – PUR meaning “fire.” PHOGA is the accusative singular of φλόξ – PLOX meaning “a flame, a blaze.” In other words, God not only created angels, but he also created their jobs. He is superior to them, therefore, He created their beings as He created their functions just as in the human race, people are born with certain talents and certain gifts. Then in the new birth God the Holy Spirit imparts spiritual gifts to the new born believer in Jesus Christ. In both cases: our physical birth and our spiritual birth, we have no control over which gifts we receive. God did not consult us concerning these issues. The sovereignty of God made the decision and did it.

The phrase “**a flame of fire**” has a connotation of judgment. The elect angels under the command of the Lord Jesus Christ administer judgment and punishment to segments of the human race at various times. Angels are His servants as well as His creatures. Therefore, His superiority is seen again.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 7: “And with regard to the angels He says, (quotation from Psalm 104:4;) ‘The One making His angels spirits and His servants a flame of fire.’”

Hebrews 1:8;

But unto the Son he saith, Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: a scepter of righteousness is the scepter of thy kingdom. (KJV)

In this verse we have the fifth quotation taken from Psalm 45:6.

But unto the Son - I want you to notice the progression here. In verse six we see the angels worshipping Jesus Christ. In verse seven we see that the angels were created by Jesus Christ and that they are the servants of Jesus Christ. And now in verse eight the writer starts with a conjunction of contrast, **“But unto the Son.”**

But - δὲ – DE. The conjunctive particle DE used as a conjunction of contrast. This sets up the contrast between the servitude of angels and the sovereignty of Jesus Christ.

Unto - πρὸς – PROS. Preposition PROS plus the accusative case of the word **“Son,”** meaning “to, toward, with regard to, concerning, with reference to.”

The Son - τὸν υἱόν – TON HUION. The first thing to note is the definite article TON. The use of the definite article emphasizes the identity of the noun. By using the definite article the writer is saying that the One who is identified here is the One of great importance. The word **“Son”** is the accusative masculine singular of the noun υἱός – HUIOS means “an adult son, a mature son.”

He saith - Not in the Greek text.

In verses 5-7 we saw one side of the picture. The Son was the Creator of angels. He created the essence and the function of angels. He told them what He did and told them what to do.

Now beginning in verse eight we see the Father who planned it all. The Father speaks to the Son. First, we saw the Son speaking to the angels, now we see the Father speaking to the Son. What does He say?

Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: a scepter of righteousness is the scepter of thy throne - This is a quotation of Psalm 45:6.

Thy throne - ὁ θρόνος σου – HO THRONOS SOU. The Greek literally says, “The throne of yours,” or “Your throne.” This refers to the throne of

Jesus Christ in contrast to the servitude of angels. The angels are servants and the worshipers of Jesus Christ. But Jesus Christ has a different function than angels. He is the ruler, and as a ruler He has a throne, “HO THRONOS.”

O God - ὁ θεός – HO THEOS. The vocative is addressed to Jesus Christ by God the Father. God the Father calls God the Son HO THEOS. The definite article preceding the word for God emphasizes the identity of the noun.

Literally, “Your throne, O God.” How permanent is that throne?

Is for ever and ever - εἰς τὸν αἰῶνα τοῦ αἰῶνος – EIS TON AIONA TOU AIONOS. The Greek literally says, “Unto the ages of the ages.” Which is an idiom meaning “Forever and ever, time without end.”

Note the contrast here: While the angels are servants administrating under the Lord Jesus Christ, Jesus Christ is the ruler forever and ever. As a ruler He has a sign of rulership, He has a scepter.

A scepter of righteousness is the scepter of thy kingdom -

A scepter - καὶ ἡ ῥάβδος – KAI HE RABDOS. RABDOS means “a rod, a wand, a staff, a scepter.” This word is used for the “shepherd’s staff,” and it is also used for the “ruler’s staff,” or “scepter.” This word was also used for the “rod of punishment.” Here it refers to the badge of rulership. A scepter is a badge of authority. The scepter was a badge of authority for kings. The rod, or the scepter, is found in many writings of the ancient world.

The rod or scepter of the Assyrian and Persian kings emphasized their absolute authority. The shepherd’s staff had the same concept to the sheep. The shepherd had a scepter and that was the staff that he carried. This concept is given in Leviticus 27:32 and Micah 7:14.

Leviticus 27:32, **The entire tithe of the herd and flock — every tenth animal that passes under the shepherd’s rod — will be holy to the Lord.** (NIV) The word for “rod” in this verse in the Septuagint is ῥάβδος – ROBDOS. The same word that is found in Hebrews 1:8.

Micah 7:14, **Shepherd your people with your staff, the flock of your inheritance, which lives by itself in a forest, in fertile pasturelands. Let them feed in Bashan and Gilead as in days long ago.** (NIV) The word translated “staff” in the NIV is ῥάβδος – ROBDOS in the Septuagint. The same word that is found in Hebrews 1:8.

Literally, “A scepter,” or “a badge.” The emblem of your authority, or your royal insignia. What kind of scepter is this?

Of righteousness - τῆς εὐθύτητος - TES EUTHUTETOS. Genitive singular of the noun εὐθύτης - EUTHUTES. Means “straightness, uprightness, righteousness.” This does not refer to the perfect inherent righteousness that is a part of God’s essence. The word for that type of righteousness is δικαιοσύνη - DIKAIOSUNE meaning “justice, virtue, godliness, perfect character.” But EUTHUTES simply means “uprightness,” and refers to the “perfect standards of establishment.” Even unbelievers can possess this type of righteousness because it deals with establishment. It involves morality, honesty, integrity and lawfulness.”

Literally, “A scepter of uprightness.” “A scepter of righteousness.” “A scepter of perfect establishment.”

Is the scepter of thy kingdom - ῥάβδος τῆς βασιλείᾳ σου - RABDOS TES BASILEIA SOU. Here we have the repetition of the word for scepter, RABDOS, plus BASILEIA for “kingdom.” The Greek literally says, “The scepter of the kingdom of yours.” In English we would simply say, “The scepter of your kingdom.”

EUTHUTES refers to the laws of divine establishment, and the scepter is the key. The scepter represents the perfect authority of the Lord Jesus Christ, and it also represents the One who makes those perfect laws function.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 8: “But regarding the Son He (God the Father) says (in Psalm 45:6), ‘Your throne, O God (God the Son) is forever and ever, and the scepter (badge) of perfect establishment is the scepter (badge) of your kingdom.’”

The first part of verse eight expands on the difference between Christ’s nature and the nature of angels. In this passage is one of most amazing and important statements in all of Scripture: Jesus Christ is eternal God. God the Father says to the Son, “**Your throne, O God is forever and ever.**” God the Father acknowledges God the Son. This verse gives one of the clearest, most powerful, emphatic and irrefutable proof of the deity of Jesus Christ in the Bible, and this proof comes from the Father Himself. Therefore, the Father confirms the deity of Jesus Christ.

Jesus Himself claimed to be deity. The Father’s testimony about the Son corresponds to the Son’s testimony about Himself. Throughout His ministry Jesus claimed equality with God. John 5:18, **For this reason the Jews tried all the harder to kill him; not only was he breaking the Sabbath, but he was even calling God his own Father, making himself equal with God.** (NIV) When Jesus said in John 10:30, **I and the Father are**

one, (NIV) the Jewish leaders well understood His claim. In the light of who they thought He was, a mere man, their reaction was to be expected. Then in John 10:33 it says, **We are not stoning you for any of these,” replied the Jews, “but for blasphemy, because you, a mere man, claim to be God.”** (NIV)

The apostles also claimed that Jesus was God. Talking about Israel and all their blessings, Paul wrote in Romans 9:5, **Theirs are the patriarchs, and from them is traced the human ancestry of Christ, who is God over all, forever praised! Amen.** (NIV) The Greek text more accurately reads, “God who is over all, blessed forever.” The claim is that Jesus Christ is God. In I Timothy 3:16 Paul also writes, **Beyond all question, the mystery of godliness is great: He appeared in a body, was vindicated by the Spirit, was seen by angels, was preached among the nations, was believed on in the world, was taken up in glory.** (NIV) Then in Titus 2:13 Paul declares, **while we wait for the blessed hope – the glorious appearing of our great God and Savior, Jesus Christ.** (NIV) Greek grammar teaches that the words **“God,” “Savior,” “Jesus” and “Christ”** are all talking about One and the same person. This is known as the Granville Sharp’s rule of Greek grammar, which states, “When one or more nouns are found in the same case, gender and number, separated by the conjunction KAI, and preceded by one definite article, they are referring to one and the same individual. The words **“God,” “Savior,” “Jesus,” and “Christ”** are all found in the genitive case, separated by the conjunction KAI, and preceded by the Greek definite article TOU. This teaches us that God is the Savior, and that Jesus Christ is God.

In I John 5:20 it says, **We know also that the Son of God has come and has given us understanding, so that we may know him who is true. And we are in him who is true – even in his Son Jesus Christ. He is the true God and eternal life.** (NIV) Throughout the New Testament the message is very clear. Jesus Christ is God!

Hebrews 1:9;

**Thou has loved righteousness, and hated iniquity;
therefore God, even thy God, hath anointed thee with the
oil of gladness above thy fellows. (KJV)**

Verse nine gives the continuation of the fifth quotation. Remember that in the fifth quotation we have two verses, Psalm 45:6-7. So far we have only studied Psalm 45:6. In verse nine we have Psalm 45:7, the rest of the quotation.

Thou hast loved - ἡγάπησας – EGAPESAS. Aorist active indicative second person singular of the verb ἀγαπάω – AGAPAO. Means “to love.”

The cognate noun is ἀγάπη – AGAPE. This is the strongest Greek word for love. It basically refers to a relaxed mental attitude. Therefore, this is a relaxed mental attitude love. This refers to a supernatural love that is only produced by God the Holy Spirit and the other members of the Trinity. AORIST TENSE (constative), this views the action of the verb in its entirety in one point of time. Sometimes the constative aorist has a “once and for all” concept.

ACTIVE VOICE: The subject produces the action of the verb. Jesus Christ as the king holding the scepter of perfect establishment produces the action of loving righteousness.

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative) referring to the absolute fact of the reality that righteousness is the basis for the function of perfect establishment. And here it refers to perfect justice.

Righteousness - δικαιοσύνην – DIKAIOSUNEN. Accusative singular of the noun δικαιοσύνη – DIKAIOSUNE. Means, “perfect and absolute righteousness when referring to God, and it refers to the principle of righteousness when referring to anything else.”

DIKAIOSUNE refers to perfect justice and righteousness as a characteristic of the ruler in our passage. While EUTHUTES, in verse 8, refers to the principle on which He rules: perfect establishment.

Literally, “You have loved righteousness (perfect justice in ruling).”

This verse reveals both Jesus’ actions and His motives. He not only acted in righteousness, He “**loved righteousness.**” How often do we do what we know is God’s will, but do so without enjoying it, in unwilling condescension?

Jesus, however, “loved righteousness.” James 1:17, **Every good and perfect gift is from above, coming down from the Father of the heavenly lights, who does not change like shifting shadows.** (NIV) That is perfect righteousness. It never varies from what is true, just and good. I John 1:5, **This is the message we have heard from him and declare to you: God is light; in him there is no darkness at all.** (NIV) God never varies; His motives and His actions remains the same. He is total light. He is total righteousness. Displayed in everything Jesus did was His love for righteousness. Even as the Psalmist wrote, **Oh, how I love your law! I meditate on it all day long.** Psalm 119:97 (NIV)

Literally, “You have loved righteousness (perfect justice in ruling).”

And hated iniquity -

Hated - ἐμίσησας – EMISTESAS. Aorist active indicative second person singular of the verb μισέω – MISEO. Means “to hate, to detest, to abhor.”

Iniquity - ἄνομίαν – ANOMIAN. Accusative singular of the noun ἄνομία – ANOMIA. This is a very interesting word. The root word is from νόμος – NOMOS meaning “law.” But it has what is called an alpha privative, which is the Greek letter “α” prefixed to NOMOS. The alpha privative negates the word to make it mean the opposite of its original meaning. Therefore, ANOMIA means “no law, lawless, or lawlessness.”

Literally, “You have hated lawlessness.”

Lawlessness stands for antiestablishment.

Lawlessness means much more than just violation of a law.

Lawlessness means much more than just criminal action.

Lawlessness means the rejection of authority.

Literally, “You have loved righteousness (perfect justice in ruling), and you have hated lawlessness (antiestablishment rebellion).”

Because Jesus Christ loves righteousness, He loves perfect establishment and He hates lawlessness, which is antiestablishment. If you love God’s righteous standards you will hate unrighteous standards. These two convictions cannot be accepted into your thinking at the same time. In other words, you cannot say, “I love righteousness but I also love lawlessness.” When you have developed in your soul a true love for God there will be a true love for righteousness and a complete hatred for unrighteousness. The more your thinking becomes conformed to the thinking of God, the more you

are going to find that you will have the same attitude of Jesus Christ. You will love righteousness, perfect establishment, and you will hate unrighteousness in all categories. By your attitude toward unrighteousness, you will be able to detect how close you are in being conformed to the thinking of Jesus Christ. Phil 2:5, **Your attitude should be the same as that of Christ Jesus:** (NIV)

Literally, “You have loved righteousness (perfect justice in ruling), and you have hated lawlessness (unrighteousness or antiestablishment).”

Therefore - διὰ τοῦτο – DIA TOUTO. First of all we have the preposition DIA, plus the accusative singular of the demonstrative pronoun οὗτος – HOUTOS. This should be translated “Because of this.”

Because of the perfect function of the laws of establishment under Christ.

Because Jesus Christ is both perfect and unique.

Because Jesus Christ is righteous and just.

Because Jesus Christ is superior to all angels.

Because of all this and much more, He will supersede Satan as the ruler of this world. A man will supersede an angel in the rulership of this world.

Literally, “Because of this.”

God - ὁ θεός – HO THEOS. The nominative singular of the noun THEOS, plus the definite article emphasizes the identity of the noun. Literally, “The God.”

Even thy God - ὁ θεός σου – HO THEOS SOU. Literally, “Even your God.”

Hath anointed - ἔχρισέν – EXRISEN. Aorist active indicative third person singular of the verb χρίω – CHRIO. Means “to be appointed, to be commissioned, to be anointed.”

AORIST TENSE (culminative), views the action of the verb in its entirety but emphasizes the results of the action. Jesus Christ was anointed in the past by God the Father, and that anointing will be fulfilled by His actual return to the earth and the setting up of His Millennial kingdom.

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject produces the action of the verb. God the Father produces the action of anointing Jesus Christ.

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative) pointing to the fact of the absolute dogmatic reality of the anointing of Jesus Christ by God the Father.

Literally, “Has anointed.”

Thee - σε – SE. Accusative singular of the personal pronoun σὺ – SU referring to Jesus Christ. Not Jesus Christ as God, but Jesus Christ as man. He is the anointed One of God, the Christ, the Messiah, the God-Man. The incarnate Christ is infinitely superior to all angels in His deity. He is also infinitely superior to all angels in His humanity. Therefore, He is appointed, commissioned or anointed king.

Literally, “Because of this, God, even your God, has anointed you.”

With the oil of gladness -

With the oil - ἔλαιον – ELEION. Accusative singular of the noun ἔλαιον – ELAION. The word ἔλαιον – ELAION means “olive oil, an olive garden,” like the Mount of Olives. The word ἔλαια – ELAIA means “olive tree.”

The Bible must be interpreted in the time in which it was written. In the ancient world they did not have ordination papers or certificates in written form. They had them with oil. In our passage being “anointed with oil” refers to a ceremonial oil which was used in the anointing of prophets, priests and kings. This is the type of oil that Samuel used to anoint David king over Israel. I Samuel 16:13, **So Samuel took the horn of oil and anointed him in the presence of his brothers, and from that day on the Spirit of the Lord came upon David in power.....** (NIV)

Whenever a man was initiated as a prophet, king or priest, into any one of these respective offices, there was always an anointing with oil. Oil, an analogy or symbol of the Holy Spirit, was placed on his head. The Lord commanded Moses never to place the anointing oil directly on the flesh, but on the head. Exodus 30:31-33, **Say to the Israelites, “This is to be my sacred anointing oil for the generations to come. (32) Do not pour it on men’s bodies and do not make any oil with the same formula. It is sacred, and you are to consider it sacred. (33) Whoever makes perfume like it and whoever puts in on anyone other than a priest must be cut off from his people.”** (NIV) This passage in Exodus is focusing on the Levitical priesthood and its special anointing. The reason the oil was not to be placed directly on the flesh of the body was because the flesh of the body is where the old sin nature is located. And the oil which represented the Holy Spirit has nothing to do with the sinful nature. Therefore, the oil was placed on the head, right above where the soul of the individual is located.

In the case of the prophets of Israel, God commanded Elijah to anoint Elisha to be a prophet. I Kings 19:15-16, **The Lord said to him (Elijah), “Go back the way you came, and go to the Desert of Damascus. When you get there, anoint Hazael king over Aram. (16) Also, anoint Jehu son of Nimshi king over Israel, and anoint Elisha son of Shaphat from Abel Meholah to succeed you as prophet.”** (NIV) If you read the entire chapter of I Kings 19 you will notice that the land of Israel was full of idols and false gods. Many people were involved in idolatry. King Ahaz was a wicked and rebellious king, and Jezebel, his wife was a wicked and rebellious queen. In fact, it was Jezebel who actually brought in most of the evil priests for the worship of Baal. But that didn't matter. Elijah was to anoint Elisha with oil. The anointing oil spoke of divine identification and divine enablement even in that day of apostasy and negative volition toward God and His Word. God was saying, “This is My prophet, I have empowered him.” God was going to have His man and His message proclaimed even if no one would believe it.

With respect to the priests of Israel, the sons of Aaron, the Levites, had ascended to the priesthood when oil was placed on their heads. This spoke of divine identification and divine enablement. God was saying, “This is My priest and I have empowered him.” Moses consecrated Aaron and his sons to the priesthood in full view of the people (Leviticus 8:5-13). The high priest would anoint the priests, and a priest would anoint the high priest. There was quite an extensive ritual involved with the priest being cleansed and consecrated for service. Exodus 29:4 and Leviticus 8:6 tell us how Moses thoroughly washed Aaron and his sons at the door of the tabernacle. This was the only time that a priest was washed by another. From then on priests washed themselves in preparation for the daily service (Exodus 30:19-20).

The kings of Israel: Saul (I Samuel 10:1), David (I Samuel 16:13) and Solomon (I Kings 1:39), were always anointed with oil. Generally it was the high priest who did the anointing, but in some cases there were exceptions. Saul and David they were anointed by Samuel the prophet, who was not a high priest, but was from the priestly tribe of Levi. About 20 years after Elijah anointed Jehu son of Nimshi to be king, Elisha was given instruction to anoint Jehu son of Jehoshaphat king over Israel (II Kings 9:1-8) Generally as the kings ascended to the throne there was an anointing before the congregation of Israel for identification purposes. God was saying, “This is My king and I have empowered him to do what I have commanded him to do.” It is important to note that anointing was generally accomplished by the high priest, but in times of apostasy God chose others to conduct the ceremony.

Verse nine literally says, “You have loved righteousness (the perfect justice of law and order in establishment), and you have hated lawlessness (the anarchy which sets itself against the laws of establishment). Because of this, God, even your God has anointed (appointed) you with the oil.”

Of gladness - ἀγαλλιάσεως – AGALLIASEOS. Genitive singular of the noun ἀγαλλίασις – AGALLIASIS. Means “exultation, extreme joy, extreme happiness.”

Therefore, Heb 1:9 tells us that Jesus Christ was anointed. But He was not anointed like the other Old Testament leaders. He was anointed with the “oil of exultation.” Why is it called the “oil of exultation?” Because through His anointing and subsequent ministry in fulfilling all that the Father had planned: He was resurrected, ascended and was seated at the right hand side of the Father. All this resulted in the “Spirit of exultation.” The Spirit of great joy and happiness. The threefold office system of prophet, priest and king are merged together in Him. That is why He is called “The anointed One.” The word “Messiah” means “the anointed One.” The word “Christ” means “the anointed One.” There were prophets, priests and kings in Israel, but He alone is “the prophet,” “The priest” and “the king” in one person. He is the anointed One.

Jesus was anointed with the “oil (Spirit) of exultation.” And through His function of all three of those offices (prophet, priest and king), He can meet every need of the human heart, restore all joy, inner peace and tranquility. Therefore it is called “The oil of exultation” or “The Spirit of exultation.”

When the men in the Old Testament were anointed with olive oil, the oil symbolized the Holy Spirit. But when Jesus was anointed, He did not get oil to symbolize the Holy Spirit, He didn’t get the shadow, He received the reality. He received the real thing, He received the literal Holy Spirit. And this is true for every believer in Jesus Christ in the Church Age. We get the real thing. We do not get the shadow or the symbol, we receive the Holy Spirit at the point of salvation. Therefore, the use of oil today in churches is meaningless. It is not commanded for us today. We are not to anoint anyone with oil, nor do we have the sacred formula required by the Mosaic Law because it is not for our age.

Jesus Christ received the Holy Spirit in power when He was baptized by John the Baptist in the Jordan River. (Matt 3:3-17; Mark 1:9-11; Luke 3:21-23). We should not be deceived into thinking that we receive the Holy Spirit in power by water baptism. We receive the Holy Spirit when we accept Jesus Christ as personal Savior through the baptism of the Holy Spirit.

Water baptism can do nothing for you spiritually. It is simply a ritual. Any overt ritual has nothing to do with your spiritual life.

When Jesus was baptized in water the voice of God the Father came out of heaven saying, **This is my beloved Son in whom I am well pleased.** (KJV) But we need to remember that anointing was for identification purposes. “This is My prophet,” “This is My priest,” “This is My king.” The one being anointed would be identified before the congregation when the literal oil was placed on his head. But in the case of our Lord Jesus Christ, there was a voice out of heaven that said, **This is my beloved Son in whom I am well pleased.** (KJV) And then what happened? The Spirit of God descended upon Him as a dove. Why? Because He was being anointed, and the dove represented the Holy Spirit.

Heb 1:9 says literally, “You have loved righteousness (justice in perfect establishment), and you have hated lawlessness (anarchy against establishment). Because of this, God, even your God, has anointed you with the oil of exultation.” With the commission of exultation, with the Spirit of exultation.

Above thy fellows - παρὰ τοὺς μετόχους σου – PARA TOUS METOCHOUS SOU. First of all we have the preposition PARA meaning “over and above.” Plus the accusative masculine plural of the adjective μέτοχος – METOCHOS meaning “an associate, a partner.”

This not only refers to all the prophets, priests and kings who were anointed in the past, but this also refers to all of the angels who were anointed or appointed to perform certain duties in the plan of God. Jesus Christ has received an anointing or a commission that is over and above all other anointings and commissions ever given, the anointing of exultation, the anointing of producing great joy. God used the dove at the anointing of Jesus Christ as an overt sign of Jesus being the anointed One.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 9: “You have loved the justice of perfect establishment, and you have hated the lawlessness of antiestablishment. Because of this, God (the Father), even your God, has anointed you (Jesus Christ, God the Son) with the oil of exultation (the commission of exultation, the commission of extreme joy) above and beyond your human and angelic associates.”

Once again note that the fifth documentation demonstrates the superiority of the Person of Jesus Christ.

Hebrews 1:10;

**And Thou, Lord, in the beginning hast laid the foundation
of the earth; and the heavens are the works of thine
hands: (KJV)**

Beginning in verse ten we have the sixth quotation from the Old Testament documenting the victory of Jesus Christ in the angelic conflict. The topic of the angelic conflict will continue on into the next chapter. This actually gets more interesting as we move along in our study.

In verse four it said, “He has inherited a more prominent name than that of the angels.” Then the writer goes on and gives three names that are superior to the angels. In verse five we saw the name “**Son.**” In verse eight we saw the name “**God.**” And now in verse ten we see the name “**Lord,**” which means “sovereign, master, Lord.” This is a word for deity.

And - καί – KAI. This little conjunctive particle introduces the sixth Old Testament quotation in this chapter. This quotation is taken from Psalm 102:25-27. This is what we call the continuative documentary KAI. It continues the documentation and it introduces a new quotation. This sixth quotation documents from the Old Testament scripture the superiority of Jesus Christ over angels. Also, keep in mind that this quotation involves the next three verses in Hebrews chapter one: verses 10, 11 and 12.

Thou, Lord -

Thou - σὺ – SU. This pronoun is the first word in the sixth quotation of the Old Testament. The first word in a Greek sentence usually gives it extreme emphasis. This is known as the emphatic position in the Greek. The Greek text should be translated “You, and only You.”

Lord - κύριε – KURIE. The vocative masculine singular of the noun κύριος – KURIOS. Means “Lord, sovereign, master.” This word is also used to refer to deity. Literally, “You, and only you, Lord.” This vocative of KURIOS refers to Jesus Christ who is both eternal God and true humanity in one person forever. The Romans claimed that Caesar was Lord (KURIOS), but Christianity said that Jesus was Lord (KURIOS). This caused a lot persecutions against Christians in the early centuries of the church. Many believers in Jesus Christ lost their lives simply because they believed that Jesus, not Caesar, was Lord (KURIOS).

Now in between these two words (THOU AND LORD), there is a prepositional phrase.

In the beginning - κατ' ἀρχάς – KAT ARCHAS. First of all we have the preposition KATA, plus the accusative case here meaning “at, or, in.” With this we have the accusative plural of the noun ἀρχή – ARCHE meaning “beginning.” But I want you to notice that this word is in the plural and should be translated “beginnings.”

The plural of the word ARCHE refers to more than one beginning. This introduces us to the Doctrine of the Order of Beginnings.

Doctrine of the Order of Beginnings

1. John 1:1, **In the beginning was the Word.** Ἐν ἀρχῇ ὁ λόγος – EN ARCHE HO LOGOS. This refers to the preexistence of Jesus Christ and to the fact that Jesus Christ is God. He preexisted creation. Therefore, first in the chronological order of beginnings is the existence of God who is without beginning. John 1:1 literally says, “In the beginning (which was not really a beginning), there always was, and there never was a time when there wasn’t the Word.”

From the standpoint of chronology John 1:1 is the oldest verse in the Bible. There is nothing older than the existence of Jesus Christ as a member of the Godhead. God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit always existed, and there never was a time when they did not exist. Therefore, the first thing in the order of beginnings is “God.” If God did not exist then nothing else could exist.

Colossians 1:16-17, **For by him (Jesus Christ) all things were created: things in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or powers or rulers or authorities; all things were created by him and for him. (17) He is before all things** (which means that He preexisted all things), **and in him all things hold together.** Meaning, “All things are sustained by him.” (NIV) (Explanation provided by the author) Simple logic tells us that, if Jesus Christ was in the beginning to create, He must have existed before the beginning and, therefore, be without beginning.

2. Gen 1:1; **In the beginning God created.** בְּרֵאשִׁית אֱלֹהִים – BERESHITH BARA ELOHIM. (KJV) This is next in the chronology of beginnings. This refers to initial creation of the universe including planet earth. The Hebrew word BERESHITH means “a beginning.” The Hebrew word BARA translated “created,” means “to create something out of nothing,” hence the initial creation. The Hebrew word translated “**God**” technically refers to the Lord Jesus Christ who was the One person of the Trinity responsible for

creating all things. We saw this in Colossians 1:16-17. By using the Greek Old Testament, Septuagint, we can understand the way Jewish scholars understood their own Scripture.

Gen 1:1, Ἐν ἀρχῇ ἐποίησεν ὁ θεὸς – EN ARCHE EPOISEN HO THEOS. EN ARCHE means “**in the beginning.**” The word “**created**” is the aorist active indicative third person singular of the verb ποιέω – POIEO meaning “to make, to cause to take place, to accomplish a beginning, to create.” It is important to note that POIEO is an aorist active indicative. The aorist tense is known as a constative aorist, which views the action of the verb in its entirety in one point of time. In other words, it took less than a second for God to create out of nothing the entire universe. The active voice tells us that God the Son, Jesus Christ produced the action of creating everything out of nothing. The indicative mood emphasizes the absolute dogmatic fact that God the Son created everything out of nothing. He spoke the word, and everything came into existence. II Pet 3:5 **For they willingly overlook and forget this [fact], that the heavens [came into] existence long ago by the word of God.....** (Amplified Bible)

3. Therefore Jesus Christ is the source of all the beginnings of history, except sin, of course. No one knows the antiquity of the universe, and no one knows the antiquity of the earth. Man in all his so-called wisdom in science does not know the age of God’s creation. Our Lord spoke the word and brought everything into existence. Billions and billions of light years of space were filled with celestial bodies all moving at very high rates of speed without bumping into each other.

When the Lord Jesus Christ created the physical universe He created it perfect and complete. Deuteronomy 32:4a, “**He is the Rock, his works are perfect** (meaning, they are complete in themselves).....” (NIV: amplification added by the author). Isaiah 45:18, **For this is what the Lord says – he who created the heavens, he is God; he who fashioned and made the earth, he founded it; he did not create it to be empty, but formed it to be inhabited.** (NIV) The word translated “**create**” in Isaiah 45:18 is the same Hebrew used in Gen 1:1, BARA, meaning “to create something from nothing.”

Therefore, when the Lord created the physical universe He created it perfect and complete. There were no ages of cooling down, and in fact, there were no six days of creation. The six days mentioned in Genesis chapter one were actually days of restoration. God took six literal 24 hour days and restored the earth after the chaos and

rebellion of Satan's fall. Satan's fall occurred somewhere between Genesis 1:1 and 1:2. Gen 1:2 tells us **And the earth was without form and void; and darkness was upon the face of the waters.** (KJV) God did not create the earth "formless and void," the fall and judgment of Satan caused the earth "to become formless and void." (KJV) (Explanation provided by the author)

During the six days of restoration recorded in Genesis chapter one, the Hebrew word for "creation" (BARA) is not used until you get down to the fifth day in verse 21, where it says that God **created great whales** (KJV), meaning that God used "nothing" to create animal life the **פְּסֻכָּה** – PSUCHE. It should be noted that animal life is known as PSUCHE, the same word God used for human life. The only difference is that God breathed into man's PSUCHE the breath of life, known as **נִשְׁמָה** – NESHAMAH meaning "breath, wind or air." It is translated "spark of life" in Gen 2:7 meaning **The breath of life.** In Gen 1:27, **God created man....** (KJV), which means that in creating the life of man God used "nothing" except His own omnipotence. **"He breathed into his nostrils the "breath of life,"** NESHAMAH. It was only when God made the man's body that He actually used something from the earth, the chemicals from the ground, and the Bible translated that with the word **"made."** Which is the Hebrew word **עָשָׂה** – ASAH meaning "to make something out of existing materials." This is not a word for creation, but for making or forming something out of material that already exists.

It should be noted here that while animals may possess life, they do not possess souls as human beings do. All that is needed to understand this is to know that God never commanded human beings to be sacrificed on the Jewish altar. Why? Because they had souls with a life that was imputed to them by God. Animals do not have that type of life. Animal life is temporary. When an animal dies, it is dead and does not have an afterlife. God would never have commanded the Jews to offer sacrifices of animals had they possessed souls.

ASAH is used in Gen 1:7 **And God made the firmament** (out of existing materials)....." God did not create (BARA), He formed or fashioned the firmament out of existing materials. (KJV) Also in Gen 1:16, **"And made two great lights** (out of existing materials, referring to the sun and moon)..... (KJV) God did not create (BARA), He formed or fashioned the sun and the moon out of material that already existed from His initial creation (BARA). In Gen 1:26 **And God said, 'Let us make** (ASAH, out of existing materials) **man.....**

(KJV)) This refers to the making and fashioning of man's physical body out of the chemicals from the ground.

Man was created full grown. Adam did not have a childhood. He was created as an adult. This should give us a clue as to what God thinks of childhood: Not much! If childhood was so important, God would have created Adam as a child so he could experience all of things modern psychology says are necessary. Such as: bonding with parents, (in this case it would be God), developing social skills before he would meet his mate and before he would have children of his own. In fact, Adam and Eve were told to have children (Gen 1:28) even though they had never experienced childhood themselves.

According to the Bible, a good or bad childhood does not determine an individual's success or lack of success in life. Modern psychology does teach some truth, but that truth is buried in many lies and deceptions. Modern psychology is the thinking of man that has been influenced by the ruler of this world, Satan. Modern psychology tells us what happens in childhood determines the outcome of our life. That is a lie! The Bible teaches us that each individual is responsible for his actions regardless of the type of childhood he had. The Bible teaches us that the only thing individuals really need is salvation through faith in the Lord Jesus Christ, and then the knowledge of the Word of God to fill their souls. Anything else is useless and worthless.

Therefore, man in all his human wisdom does not have the answers he claims to have about the creation of the earth and the reason for inconsistent behavior of human beings. There are many things the Lord accomplished that man cannot explain. And yet in his arrogance man claims to have the answers, when he really doesn't. Rom 1:22, **Professing themselves to be wise, they became fools.** (KJV)

4. John 8:44a, Jesus said **You belong to your father, the devil, and you want to carry out your father's desire. He was a murderer from the beginning.....** (NIV) The phrase "from the beginning" in the Greek is: ὁπρῆς - AP ARCHES. This refers to a beginning in the distant past, but not as far back as the other two references. We know this because of the preposition that is used. This refers to the time when Lucifer was created. Here in John 8:44 the preposition APO plus the genitive case of ARCHES, minus the definite article places emphasis on the character of the noun. But APO does not go as far back in the past as the preposition EN, which is used in John 1:1; and Gen 1:1 in the Septuagint.

Therefore, sometime after the creation of the universe the angels were created, and Satan, the devil, was one of those angels, but he was given greater intelligence and power than all the other angels, Ezekiel 28:12b,.....**You were the model of perfection, full of wisdom and perfect in beauty.**” Ezekiel 28:14, **“You were anointed (designated) as the guardian (the head, the chief) cherub.....”** At some point before Gen 1:2 Satan rebelled against the sovereignty of God and attempted to elevate himself above the authority of God, Isaiah 14:13-14, **You** (Lucifer, the original name of Satan, also called the devil) **said in your heart, “I will raise my throne** (Satan possessed a ruling throne before his fall, and there is circumstantial evidence in the Bible to indicate that his original throne was centered on the earth) **above the stars of God** (The word “stars” is used in Scripture to refer to angels in many instances); **I will sit enthroned on the mount of assembly, on the utmost heights of the sacred mountain.** (The sacred mountain refers to the government of God) (14) **I will ascend above the tops of the clouds;** (“clouds” are often used to refer to the glory of God) **I will make myself like the Most High** (ELYON meaning “the Most High”).” (NIV) (Explanation provided by the author)

Ezekiel 28:15 tells us of Satan’s first sin against God, **You were blameless in your ways from the day you were created till wickedness was found in you.** (NIV) The wickedness that was found in Lucifer was the attitude of rebellion against his creator. As a result of Lucifer’s rebellion God destroyed the earth and all of the original creation. This is described in Gen 1:2, **Now the earth was (became) formless and empty, and darkness was over the surface of the deep, and the Spirit of God was hovering over the waters.** (NIV) The original creation included a beautiful environment of plants with great variety of animals, and possibly dinosaurs. Beginning in Gen 1:3 we begin to read about the restoration of the earth in order for it to be inhabited by man.

4. Matt19:4, **And he answered and said unto them, Have ye not read, that he which made them at the beginning made them male and female.....** (KJV) This also is the preposition APO plus the genitive singular of the noun ARCHES. This is also used with the aorist tense of the verb “**made**” referring to the distant past, but not as far back as the angels. This beginning refers to the time after the six days of restoration. In fact, it was on the sixth day that God created man.

THE ORDER OF BEGINNINGS

GOD..... John 1:1;

UNIVERSE..... Gen 1:1;

ANGELS..... John 8:44;

MAN..... Matt 19:4;

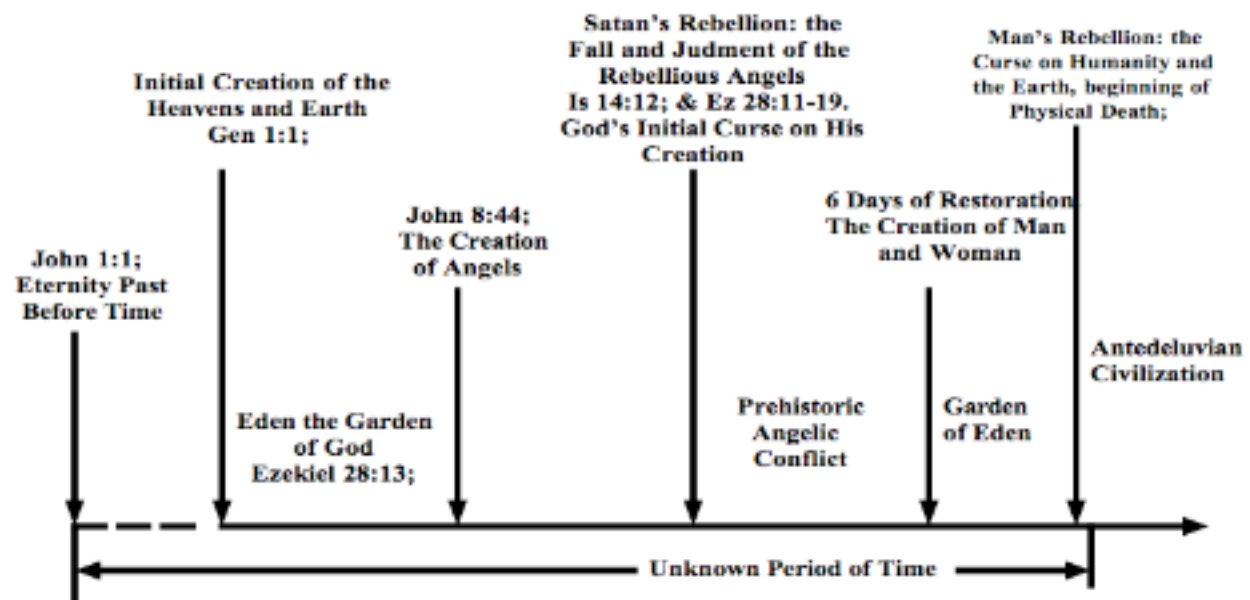
SUMMARY OUTLINE

1. God created the heavens and the earth out of nothing (Gen 1:1). He spoke the word and they came into existence perfect and complete.
2. God created the angelic race of super creatures, and He placed one of them, Lucifer, over all of His creation.
3. The earth became Lucifer's headquarters after his creation. He possessed a throne as per Isaiah 14:13, the words "**mount of the assembly**" (NIV, this refers to the earth. The King James version says, "**The mount of the congregation.**" There are no "**congregations**" or "assemblies" in heaven, only on the earth.

Also the word "**north**" is found in the Hebrew text in this verse. There is no "**north**" in heaven, only on the earth.

4. Lucifer rebelled against God, and the angelic war began (Isaiah 14:12-14).
5. There was chaos throughout God's creation because of Lucifer's rebellion. God judged Lucifer and brought devastation to all of the original creation, Gen 1:2, **Now the earth was** (became) **formless and empty, and darkness was over the surface of the deep, and the Spirit of God was hovering over the waters.** (NIV)
6. God then took six literal 24 hour days to restore the earth in order that man could live on it (Gen 1:2b-25).
7. God created man and placed him on the earth as its caretaker and ruler. Since Lucifer had been judged and expelled from God's government, man now took the position of rulership of the earth.

8. But when man sinned and rebelled against God, he actually gave the ruling authority back to Lucifer. And Lucifer, under the names of Satan or Devil, has been ruling the earth ever since. But when Jesus Christ returns at His Second Advent He will replace Satan as the ruler of the earth. When this occurs, the rulership of the earth will then be given back to man, the Man, Christ Jesus.



Timeline of God's Order of Beginnings

For more in-depth information concerning this subject the author suggests reading the book "The Invisible War" by Donald Grey Barnhouse. Originally copyrighted and published in 1965, this book has been reprinted many times.

Hebrews 1:10;

Therefore, there is more than one beginning. And all of these beginnings are recognized by the plural word ARCHE.

The Greek word order in vs 10 can be translated, "You and only you Lord, at the beginning." This is the beginning of the quotation of Psalm 102:25. But you don't find that quotation in the King James Version, but rather in the Septuagint, the Greek translation of the Old Testament. We have to keep in mind that the writer of the book of Hebrews quotes the Old Testament from the Greek Septuagint, also called the LXX because 70 Jewish Greek scholars translated the Hebrew Old Testament into Greek. This translation was used by the early Christians in the first few centuries of the Church Age. In this quotation we have a specific reference to one of the things that Jesus Christ did as Creator.

Hast laid the foundation of the earth -

Hast laid the foundation - ἐθεμελίωσας – ETHEMELIOSAS. Aorist active indicative second person singular of the verb θεμελιόω – THEMELIOO. Means “to found, to establish, to render firm and unwavering, to lay a solid foundation.”

AORIST TENSE (constative), which views the action of the verb in its entirety in one point of time. The constative aorist tells us that Jesus Christ laid the foundations of the earth in a way that they would be firm and unwavering. It should be noted here that “unwavering” does not mean there will be no earthquakes. It means that there will be no earthquake or any other disaster that can destroy what God has established.

Paul confirms this concept in Col 1:17 when he writes, **He is before all things, and in him all things HOLD TOGETHER.** (NIV) (Emphasis supplied by the author) This means that, “in Him all things are sustained and maintained.” (NIV) The writer of Hebrews mentioned this same principle back in verse 3 of this chapter in Hebrews, **The Son is the radiance of God’s glory and the exact representation of his being SUSTAINING all things by his powerful word.....** (NIV) (Emphasis added by the author) These are all amplifications of the Greek THEMELIOO found in our passage of Heb 1:10. In other words, when Jesus Christ laid the foundation of the earth, He laid it in a way that nothing could destroy it or change it in a way that would cause life to cease from existing on the earth. This should tell us that man’s extreme environmentalist programs are evil, blasphemous and denounce the Creator who has promised to sustain and protect His creation until He decides to destroy it. That won’t occur until after the Great White Throne Judgment of Revelation chapter 20. The actual destruction of the earth and all creation is recorded in II Peter 3:10, **But the day of the Lord will come like a thief. The heavens will disappear with a roar; the elements will be destroyed by fire, and the earth and everything in it will be laid bare.** (NIV) This will occur after the Great White Throne Judgment of Revelation 20:11-15.

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject produces the action of the verb. Jesus Christ produced the action of “establishing a firm and unwavering” foundation for the earth.

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative), which emphasizes the absolute, dogmatic fact of the historical reality that it was Jesus Christ who “established a firm and unwavering” foundation for the earth.

PRINCIPLE: Man’s foolish ideas that he can destroy himself and the earth by some super weapon, or by causing global warming and climate change are all a part of Satanic propaganda to cause unbelief in the Creator and sustainer of all things, the Lord Jesus Christ.

Literally, “You, and only You, Lord, have laid the foundation and established the earth in a firm and unwavering fashion.”

Job 38:4, **“Where were you when I laid the earth’s foundation? Tell me, if you understand.”** (NIV) The word **“foundation”** is the present active infinitive of the verb θεμελιόω – THEMELIOO. The same word used in Heb 1:10.

Psalms 102:25, **In the beginning you laid the foundations (THEMELIOO) of the earth, and the heavens are the work of your hands.** (NIV)

Psalms 104:5, **He set the earth on its foundations (THEMELIOO); it can never be moved.** (NIV)

Zechariah 12:1, **This is the word of the Lord concerning Israel. The Lord, who stretches out the heavens, who lays the foundation (THEMELIOO) of the earth, and who forms the spirit of man within him.....** (NIV)

The word THEMELIOO is found five times in the New Testament: Matt 7:24, refers to building your house on the rock. Eph 3:17, where it is translated **“rooted and established.”** Col 1:23, where it is translated **“established and firm,”** referring to your faith. 1 Pet 5:10, where it states that God’s grace will make you **“strong, firm and steadfast.”** Heb 1:10 refers to the creative and sustaining power of the Lord Jesus Christ. It should be noted that since this word is used five times in the New Testament (five being the number of grace), it is a testimonial to the sustaining ministry of the Lord Jesus Christ.

The earth - τήν γῆν – TEN GEN. First of all we have the definite article TEN, plus the accusative singular of the noun γῆ – GE. Means “earth, land.” There is a definite article preceding the word for **“earth.”** The use of the definite article emphasizes the identity of the noun. In this passage it is the earth that is emphasized. Why? Because it is the earth that is the center of the angelic conflict. It is where Satan’s prehistoric trial was conducted. The earth, where Satan once ruled, is now inhabited by an inferior creature called man. God created man to resolve the prehistoric appeal of Satan. Therefore, the earth is the center of attention in God’s plan of answering Satan’s appeal of his sentence.

And the heavens - οἱ οὐρανοί – HOI OURANOI. First of all we have the definite article which emphasizes the identity of the noun. The noun is the nominative masculine plural of οὐρανός – OURANOS. It means “heavens.” Here it is in the plural, just as it is in the Greek and the Hebrew in the Old

Testament from which it is quoted. The plural is a reference to the three heavens which are taught in Scripture.

1. The first heaven is the atmosphere of the earth which extends out into space.
2. The second heaven contains the stellar galaxies and solar systems far beyond the first heaven surrounding the earth.
3. The third heaven is the throne room of God.

Literally, “You, and only You, Lord, have laid the foundation of the earth and the heavens.”

Are the works of thine hands -

Are - εἶσιν – EISIN. Present active indicative third person plural of the verb εἶμι – EIMI. Verb of absolute status quo, absolute state of being.” Literally, “The earth and the heavens keep on existing,” or “keep on being.”

The works - ἔργα – ERGA. Nominative neuter plural of the noun ἔργον – ERGON. Means “work, deed, production.” It is in the plural here.

Of thine hands - τῶν χειρῶν σου – TON CHEIRON SOU. First of all we have the definite article TON which emphasizes the identity of the noun. Next we have the genitive plural of the noun χεῖρ – CHEIR meaning “hand.” This word, when used of any member of the Trinity, is known in theology as an anthropomorphism. The hand belongs to the anatomy of a man, not to God.

God does not have hands; God is Spirit (John 4:24). Here in our passage the writer ascribes to God a human characteristic. He does not possess in order to make a point. The point is this: the preincarnate Christ has more power (in His hands which He did not possess at the time of creation) than all the power of all the angels put together.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 10: “You, and only You, Lord, at the beginning, You have laid the foundation and established the earth and the heavens, which are the works of Your hands.”

“**The hands**” of the preincarnate Christ is an anthropomorphism and makes for a very interesting study. Here in our passage of Hebrews 1:10, and in Psalm 19:1 it says that Jesus Christ created the universe, so the word “**hands**” is used to refer to Jesus Christ as the Creator.

A study of the analogy of the use of the word “hands” is fascinating. The hands of Jesus Christ were nailed to the cross, Psalm 22:16, John 20:19-28. So the “**hands**” that created the universe are the “**hands**” that were nailed to the cross. The hands of Jesus Christ are also known as the hands of security. Psalm 37:24, **though he stumble, he will not fall, for the Lord upholds him with his hand.** (NIV) Therefore the hands of Jesus Christ are used by Bible writers for the hands of creation, the hands of salvation and the hands of security.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 10: “You, and only You, Lord, at the beginning have laid the foundation and established the earth and the heavens, which are the works of Your hands.”

Hebrews 1:11;

They shall perish; but thou remainest; and they all shall wax old as doth a garment; (KJV)

They - αὐτοὶ – AUTOI. Nominative masculine plural third person singular of the intensive pronoun αὐτός – AUTOS is used in a reflexive sense here. AUTOS means “he, she, it, self, same, or they” in the plural. This refers to “the earth and the heavens” of the previous verse. The reflexive pronoun could be translated “they themselves.” The earth refers to the abode of mankind, and the heavens refers to the abode of angels.

Shall perish - ἀπολοῦνται – APOLOUNTAI. Future middle indicative third person plural of the verb ἀπόλλυμι – APOLLUMI. Means “to destroy utterly, to kill, to perish, to make void.” This refers to the future destruction of the heavens and the earth at the end of the Millennial reign of Jesus Christ. The Millennium is a civilization of perfect environment ushered in by the Second Advent of Jesus Christ.

Ever since man was expelled from the Garden of Eden he has longed for a return to perfect environment. Down through the course of human history man has dreamed of and schemed for a perfect environment. Today he is trying to legislate perfect environment, and trying to establish perfect environment through education, socialism, welfare, religion and psychology. Man has never and will never succeed in creating a perfect environment. It is the arrogance of man to even think that he is able to do such a thing.

Man can never succeed in establishing perfect environment on the earth because Satan is the ruler of the earth. John 12:31 Satan is called “**the prince of this world.**” (KJV) In Ephesians 2:2 Satan is called “**the prince of the power of the air.**” (KJV) The air refers to the atmosphere around this world. Therefore, man cannot bring about perfect environment because man is not in control of his environment.

But, at the Second Advent, Jesus Christ will dethrone the devil and throw him into the prison called “**the bottomless pit**” in the KJV and “**the abyss**” in the NIV, Rev 20:3. Then Jesus Christ will replace him as the ruler of this world and will bring about perfect environment and perfect peace on the earth. That is why He is called “**the Prince of Peace**” in Isaiah 9:6. Our Lord will not only establish perfect peace and prosperity, but that perfect environment on the earth will endure for one thousand years. But at the end of the thousand years something very amazing will occur. The Lord will release Satan for a short time and He will cause many people on the earth to

rebel against the rulership of the Lord Jesus Christ. There is always a rebel somewhere who desires to revolt against something no matter how perfect things may be.

The release of Satan is permitted in order to test all the individuals who were born during the thousand year kingdom. Being the genius he is, Satan will persuade many people to follow him in this last great rebellion against the Lord Jesus Christ. The basic reason for this rebellion is people being convinced that their lives are no better under the rulership of Christ. Satan will stir up dissatisfaction, and the arrogance of man will follow the arrogance of Satan in this rebellion.

Revolution has never solved anything. All revolution in the recorded history of mankind reveals that things actually get worse after a revolution, and the people end up with less freedom than they had before. The fact is, God detests revolution, and He detests revolutionaries. Rom 13:1-7 describes God's attitude toward anyone who rebels against those in authority.

It should be noted at this time that the American Revolution was technically not a revolution. It was a war for independence. There is a tremendous difference. A revolution attempts to destroy the existing government and establish a new government, but a war for independence only desires to create a state of independence from the existing authority. The founding fathers of the United States of America only wanted to become independent of Great Britain. Therefore, we have the American War for Independence, not the American Revolution. Calling it a "revolution" is a part of the rewriting of American history.

But, as mentioned previously, at the end of our Lord's reign of one thousand years there will be a revolution by those who are opposed to our Lord's rule.

What type of people would revolt against the Lord Jesus Christ, the King of kings and Lord of lords? If the attitudes of people today are any indication of what people will be thinking at the end of the kingdom, it will be those who lean toward the principles of liberalism, religion, preoccupation with self, those who think they should have a say in running the government or those who are living in arrogance.

Regardless of their reasons for rebelling against the government of Jesus Christ, He will have no sympathy for their cause, and He will destroy them all. He will violently destroy the revolutionaries by means of fire coming out from heaven (Rev 20:9). After the revolutionaries are destroyed, there will be the resurrection of all believers in Jesus Christ living in the Millennial kingdom, and there will be a judgment seat for their evaluation. Then there will be the resurrection of all unbelievers of human history. They will all stand before

the Lord Jesus Christ at the Great White Throne Judgment. (Rev 20:11-15). Satan, fallen angels and demons have already received their judgment in eternity past. Satan rebelled against God and His authority long before man was created and placed on the earth. At that time He, and the angels who followed him, received their judgment and were sentenced to the lake of fire, which was created **“for the devil and his angels”** (NIV: Matt 25:41).

Therefore, at the time of the Great White Throne Judgment, only the unbelievers of the human race will receive judgment. Then, Satan, fallen angels, demons and all unregenerate human beings will be thrown into the lake of fire (Rev 20:15). After all this, our Lord will then destroy the heavens and the earth.

II Peter 3:10-14, **But the day of the Lord will come like a thief. The heavens will disappear with a roar; the elements will be destroyed by fire, and the earth and everything in it will be laid bare.**

(11) Since everything will be destroyed in this way, what kind of people ought you to be? You ought to live holy and godly lives (12) as you look forward to the day of God and speed its coming. That day will bring about the destruction of the heavens by fire, and the elements will melt in the heat. (13) But in keeping with his promise we are looking forward to a new heaven and a new earth, the home of righteousness. (14) So then, dear friends, since you are looking forward to this, make every effort to be found spotless, blameless and at peace with him. (NIV)

Rev 21:1, **Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the first heaven and the first earth had passed away, and there was no longer any sea. (NIV)**

Hebrews 1:11 literally says in an expanded and corrected form, “They themselves shall be totally destroyed.”

But thou - σὺ δὲ – SU DE. First of all we have the pronoun SU meaning “You,” then the coordinate conjunction DE setting up the contrast. This phrase is in the emphatic position in the Greek. “Emphatically You.” Even though that is what it really means, it is next to impossible to translate it that way and still maintain a smooth English translation. It can be translated “But as for You.”

Remainest - διαμένεις – DIAMENEIS. Present active indicative second person singular of the verb διαμένω – DIAMENO. Means “to continue, to be permanent and unchanged, to remain constant.”

PRESENT TENSE linear aktionsart referring to continuous action. The Lord always continues, He is always consistent and unchanging.

ACTIVE VOICE: the Lord produces the action of always being permanent and unchanging.

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative), representing absolute reality. It is an absolute fact of reality that the Lord is constantly consistent, and is permanently unchangeable.

Jesus Christ remains unchangeable no matter what He does, no matter what He experiences and no matter what others try to do to Him.

Literally, "But as for You (Jesus Christ), You remain permanent and unchanged."

Permanency is a characteristic of God in the absolute and the eternal.

Hebrews 13:8, **Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and today, and for ever.** (KJV)

But they all - καὶ πάντες - KAI PANTES. First of all we have the conjunction KAI which is translated as an adversative here, "but." Then we have the nominative masculine plural of the adjective πᾶς - PAS meaning "all, the whole, the entirety." This refers to the heavens and the earth.

This refers to all of the galaxies and stars, all of the planets and their moons. It refers to everything that came into existence in Genesis 1:1.

Shall wax old - παλαιωθήσονται - PALAIOTHESONTAI. Future passive indicative third person plural of the verb παλαιόω - PALAIOO. Means "to grow old, to become worn out." The idea here is not that the heavens and the earth will become old so far as a lapse of time is concerned, but old in the sense of wearing out.

FUTURE TENSE: This refers to the future time after the one thousand year kingdom, and after the Great White Throne Judgment. So you could actually say that the earth will be old and worn out approximately 1,007 years from now, that is, if the rapture and resurrection of the Church Age believers occurred today. The number, one thousand years, is based on Rev 20:2.

PASSIVE VOICE: The subject receives the action of the verb. The heavens and earth receive the action of wearing out.

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative), referring to the absolute dogmatic fact that the heavens and the earth will wear out in the future.

Literally, "And they shall become old and worn out."

The heavens and the earth that now exist are going to wear out, and be replaced by the new heavens and the new earth.

As doth a garment - ὥς ἱμάτιον – HOS HIMATION. First of all we have the comparative particle HOS, plus the nominative neuter singular of the noun ἱμάτιον – HIMATION. Means “a garment, a tunic, raiment.” This is used as an illustration. Just as you wear something until it wears out, then you get something new, so also, the Lord will replace the old worn out heavens and earth when they wear out, and He will replace them with something new.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 11: “They themselves shall be totally destroyed, but as for You, You remain permanent and unchanged. All of these shall become old and worn out just as clothing does.”

Just as you would roll up and throw away an old, worn-out garment when you are finished with it, one day Jesus Christ will discard the heavens and the earth. One day “the elements” will be destroyed by intense heat, **“the earth and everything in it will be laid bare.”** (The Greek word καυσώω – KAUSOO means “to burn up.”) (NIV, II Peter 3:10). One day “The sky will split apart like a scroll when it is rolled up, and every mountain and island will be moved out of their places.” (paraphrase of Revelation 6:14 by the author)

During the tribulation period, (a period of seven years just prior to the one thousand year kingdom), the heavens will be stretched to the limit and the corners then cut. They will roll up just like a scroll. (Rev 6:14) There will be asteroids and meteor showers crashing to the earth and every island and mountain will move out of its place. In other words, this old world is going to fall apart, and be remodeled in preparation for the kingdom of Jesus Christ.

Things that we see and feel seem so permanent. Like the people that the apostle Peter warned, we are tempted to think that **all things continue as they were from the beginning of the creation** (KJV: II Peter 3:4). But all things are going to be totally destroyed, and the Lord is going to create a new heaven and a new earth. The entire creation of God as we know it today will be completely changed, but the Creator will not be changed. The total and complete destruction of the entire physical universe is as sure as its creation. In fact, the One who created the physical universe will be the One who destroys it.

The Creator, Jesus Christ, is eternal, He is immutable, He never changes. Men come and go, stars come and go, worlds come and go, nations come and go, but Jesus Christ remains forever. He is never subject to change, He

is never subject to alteration of any kind. He is eternally the same. He is, therefore, superior to angels in title. He has a superior name: “Son, God and Lord.” He is superior to angels in existence; He had no beginning and He will have no end. He is superior to angels in destiny; God has appointed Him the Heir of all things.

SUMMARY OF THE END OF ALL THINGS

1. The Lord Jesus Christ declared the end with simplicity in Matt 24:35, **Heaven and earth shall pass away.....** (KJV)
2. The Apostle Peter describes the Day of the Lord, referring to the end of the Millennial kingdom, **But the day of the Lord will come like a thief. The heavens will disappear with a roar; the elements will be destroyed by fire, and the earth and everything in it will be laid bare. (11) Since everything will be destroyed in this way, what kind of people ought you to be? You ought to live holy and godly lives (12) as you look forward to the day of God and speed its coming. That day will bring about the destruction of the heavens by fire, and the elements will melt in the heat.** (NIV, II Peter 3:10-12)
3. The writer of Hebrews not only discusses the destruction of the universe in chapter one, but also in Hebrews 12:26-27, **At that time his voice shook the earth, but now he has promised,** (in Haggai 2:6) **“Once more I will shake not only the earth but also the heavens.” (27) The words “once more” indicate the removing of what can be shaken – that is, created things – so that what cannot be shaken may remain.** (NIV) What cannot be shaken? Everyone in resurrection bodies. It should be noted that the Lord will not destroy the heavens and the earth until all resurrections have been accomplished and fulfilled. In other words, those of us who are believers in Jesus Christ are going to witness a show that beats all shows. We will have a front row seat at the destruction of the heavens and the earth, and then we will see our Lord create a new heaven and new earth. No one can come close to imagining what a sight that will be.

Notice the wording of Matthew 13:43, **Then the righteous** (meaning all those who have accepted Jesus Christ as their personal Savior and possess God’s perfect righteousness) **will shine like the sun in the kingdom of their Father.....** (NIV) Not only will the souls and resurrection bodies of believers be untouched by the majestic power of the Lord in destroying the heavens and the earth, but the Word of God that each believer learned in time will survive the destruction of the

universe. Matthew 24:35, **Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will never pass away.** (NIV) Bible doctrine in your soul can never be destroyed or taken away. It should be noted here that angels already have eternal bodies. Therefore, they will not be effected by the destruction of God's creation.

4. The Old Testament also teaches the total destruction of the heavens and the earth. Isaiah 34:4, **All the stars of the heavens will be dissolved and the sky rolled up like a scroll; all the starry host will fall like withered leaves from the vine, like shriveled figs from the fig tree.** (NIV)
5. Revelation 20:11, **Then I saw a great white throne and him who was seated on it. Earth and sky fled from his presence, and there was no place for them.** (NIV)
6. Revelation 21:1, **Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the first heaven and the first earth had passed away, and there was no longer any sea.** (NIV)
7. All of the passages just quoted show us that there is to be an end of the material heavens and earth. It is not that they are to be purified or rehabilitated, but the reverse of creation is to take place. Technically, they are to be "uncreated." As they came from nothing at the beginning, at the word of the Lord they will return to nothing.
8. Science may say that matter cannot be made and that matter cannot be destroyed, but such an attitude does not believe in the God of creation. Once you believe in the God of creation you should have no trouble in believing that the same God is able to put the entire process into reverse. Matter is dissolved, destroyed, folded up.

Paul says in II Cor 4:18b, **For what is seen is temporary, but what is unseen is eternal.** (NIV) Note: God is the only One who can take that which is physical and cause it not to exist. This violates all the laws of physics. But remember, God created the laws of physics, and He can change them anytime He so desires.

II Peter 3:3-13 in the NIV. **First of all, you must understand that in the last days scoffers will come, scoffing and following their own evil desires. (4) They will say, "Where is this 'coming' he promised? Ever since our fathers died, everything goes on as it has since the beginning of creation." (5) But they deliberately forget that long ago by God's word the heavens existed and the earth was formed out of water and by water. (6) By these**

waters also the world of that time was deluged and destroyed. (7) By the same word the present heavens and earth are reserved for fire, being kept for the day of judgment and destruction of ungodly men.

(8) But do not forget this one thing, dear friends: With the Lord a day is like a thousand years, and a thousand years are like a day. (9) The Lord is not slow in keeping his promise, as some understand slowness. He is patient with you, not wanting anyone to perish, but everyone to come to repentance.

(10) But the day of the Lord will come like a thief. The heavens will disappear with a roar; the elements will be destroyed by fire, and the earth and everything in it will be laid bare.

(11) Since everything will be destroyed in this way, what kind of people ought you to be? You ought to live holy and godly lives (12) as you look forward to the day of God and speed its coming. (Literally, "wait eagerly for its coming.") That day will bring about the destruction of the heavens by fire, and the elements will melt in the heat. (13) But in keeping with his promise we are looking forward to a new heaven and a new earth, the home of righteousness. (NIV)

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSES 11: "They themselves shall be totally destroyed, but as for You, You remain permanent and unchanged. And all these shall become old and worn out just as does clothing."

Hebrews 1:12;

And as a vesture shalt thou fold them up, and they shall be changed; but thou art the same, and thy years shall not fail. (KJV)

And as - καὶ ὥσεί - KAI HOSEI. First of all we have the connective use of the conjunction KAI, plus the adverb ὥσει - HOSEI meaning “like, as, like as.” Literally this says, “And like a vesture.” This is a continuation of the illustration.

A vesture - περιβόλαιον - PERIBOLAION. Accusative neuter singular of the noun περιβόλαιον - PERIBOLAION. The prefixed preposition PERI means “around.” BOLAION is from BALLO meaning “to throw.” PERIBOLAION means “that which is thrown around anyone, clothing, a covering, a cloak, a mantle, a vesture.”

Shalt thou fold them up - ἐλίξεις - HELIXEIS. Future active indicative second person singular of the verb ἐλίσσω - HELISSO. Means “to roll up, to fold up.”

FUTURE TENSE: In the future, after the 1,000 year Millennial kingdom, and the Great White Throne Judgment, the Lord is going to roll up (fold up) the heavens and the earth and discard them in the fire because they are worn out and useless.

ACTIVE VOICE: The Lord Himself produces the action of rolling up (folding up) the heavens and the earth and discarding them.

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative) referring to the absolute dogmatic fact of this reality. The heavens and the earth are going to wear out, and when they do, the Lord is going to roll them up (fold them up) as an old piece of clothing and discard them in the fire. Then He will create new ones.

Literally, “And just like a garment, You will fold them up.”

And they shall be changed - ἀλλάγησονται - ALLAGESONTAI. Future passive indicative third person plural of the verb ἀλλάσσω - ALLASSO. Means “to change, to alter, to transform, to exchange.”

FUTURE TENSE: In the future after the Millennial kingdom and after the Great White Throne Judgment the Lord is going to roll up (fold up) the heavens and the earth and discard them in the sense of transforming their matter into something else.

PASSIVE VOICE: The subject receives the action of the verb. The heavens and the earth receive the action of being changed or transformed. In other words, this doesn't happen through any natural process. Jesus Christ will take the heavens and the earth and "fold them up like clothing" and destroy their current physical configuration, and change them into that which is compatible with the environment of the eternal state. The Apostle John speaks of this in Revelation 21:1, **"Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the first heaven and the first earth had passed away** (their substance was destroyed and transformed into a substance compatible with the environment of God's existence), **and there was no longer any sea."** (NIV) (Explanation provided by the author)

The reason for "no more sea" is because the environment of the eternal state is an environment depending upon God's provision, whereas, the physical environment that we are currently living in is dependent upon the sea to recycle the air necessary for continued existence. In our resurrection bodies we will no longer need the things we depend upon now. We know this from what our Lord taught us while living on the earth in His resurrection physical body. It was physical in that it could be touched and felt, yet it was spiritual in a sense that it could defy gravity and could defy all normal physical laws by passing through walls or appearing and disappearing at will.

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative) referring to the absolute dogmatic fact of the reality that the heavens and the earth as we know them now will be completely and totally changed. Their matter will be destroyed, and a completely new and better system will be created.

PRINCIPLE: While the heavens and the earth will be destroyed, and replaced with something much superior, the superiority of Jesus Christ over angels remains unchanged. We need to keep in mind that the subject of Hebrews chapter one is the superiority of Jesus Christ over angels.

Literally, "And just like a garment, You will fold them up, and they will be changed."

But thou - σὺ δὲ – SU DE. This is the identical Greek construction that we saw in verse 11. First of all we have the pronoun SU meaning "You," then the coordinate conjunction DE setting up the contrast. This phrase is in the emphatic position in the Greek. "Emphatically You." Even though that is what it really means, it is next to impossible to translate it that way and still have it remain a smooth English translation. It can be translated "But as for You."

Literally, “And just like a garment, You will fold them up and they will be changed, but as for You.”

Thou art the same -

Thou art - εἶ – EI. Present active indicative second person singular of the verb εἶμί EIMI. The verb of absolute status quo, absolute state of being.”

Literally, “But as for You, You keep on being.”

The same - ὁ αὐτὸς – HO AUTOS. This is the intensive pronoun often used as a reflexive pronoun. But when it has a definite article preceding it, it means “the same, or unchangeable.”

Literally, “But as for You, You keep on being the same,” or “But as for You, You keep on being unchangeable.”

Jesus Christ will remain in hypostatic union forever.

And thy years - καὶ τὰ ἔτη σου – KAI TA ETE SOU. Literally, “And the years of You.” This was simply a manner in dating age in the ancient world. Literally, “And your years.”

Shall not fail - οὐκ ἐκλείψουσιν – OUK ECKLEITHPSOUSIN. First of all we have the negative OUK, plus the future active indicative third person plural of ἐκλείπω – ECKLEIPO. Means “to come to an end, to fail.”

Literally, “And your years will not come to an end.”

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 12: “And just like a garment, You will fold them up (the heavens and the earth), and they will be changed (destroyed and replaced). But as for You, You keep on being unchanged, and Your years will not come to an end.”

PRINCIPLE: The heavens and the earth are at the mercy of Jesus Christ, but Jesus Christ is never at the mercy of the heavens and the earth.

PRINCIPLE: Mother Nature and all things pertaining to the physical environment will be destroyed at that time, and fallen angels will be thrown into the Lake of Fire “**Prepared for the devil and his angels**” (KJV Matthew 25:41). It is very important to understand that Jesus Christ is untouched by any of these things; so also, all those who are in union with Him.

Hebrews 1:13;

But to which of the angels said he at any time, Sit on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool? (KJV)

Verse 13 introduces the eighth and last Old Testament quotation in this chapter. This quotation is taken from Psalm 110:1.

Summary of Quotations Found in Chapter One

- | | | |
|----|------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. | Hebrews 1:5; | Quotation from Psalm 2:7; |
| 2. | Hebrews 1:5; | Quotation from Samuel 7:14; |
| 3. | Hebrews 1:6; | Quotation from Psalm 97:7 |
| 4. | Hebrews 1:6; | Quotation from Deuteronomy 32:43; |
| 5. | Hebrews 1:7; | Quotation from Psalm 104:4; |
| 6. | Hebrews 1:8-9; | Quotation from Psalm 45:6-7; |
| 7. | Hebrews 1:10-12; | Quotation from Psalm 102:25-27; |
| 8. | Hebrews 1:13; | Quotation from Psalm 110:1; |

It should be noted that these quotations are taken from the Greek Old Testament (Septuagint), not the Hebrew Old Testament.

But to which of the angels -

But - δὲ – DE. A conjunctive particle used to set up a contrast between Jesus Christ and angels.

To which - πρὸς τίνα – PROS TINA. First of all we have the preposition PROS, plus the accusative singular of the pronoun TIS meaning “who, what, which.” This can be translated “Face to face with, toward, to which.”

Of the angels - τῶν ἀγγέλων – TON AGGELON. First of all we have the definite article TON, which is used to identify the noun. The noun is the genitive plural of ἄγγελος – AGGELOS meaning “one sent, a messenger, an angel.” This word is used throughout the New Testament for human messengers as well as angelic messengers. Here the writer is referring to angelic messengers.

Said he - εἶρηκέν - EIREKEN. Perfect active indicative third person singular of the verb ῥέω - REO. This is an obsolete form that comes from Classical Greek of the 5th century B.C. The Koine Greek of the New Testament usually uses the word λέγω - LEGO meaning to “say, or to speak.” But here the writer goes back to an earlier form, indicating that he is very proficient with the earlier Greek. In fact, throughout the book of Hebrews the writer uses a number of Classical Greek forms and idioms in communicating God’s message.

PERFECT TENSE: Used to refer to a past completed action which has permanent results. In other words, the perfect tense is used to indicate “The perfect and permanent record stated here.”

ACTIVE VOICE: The subject produces the action of the verb. God the Father produces the action of speaking.

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative) referring to the absolute dogmatic fact of this historical reality.

Literally, “But to which of the angels has He ever said.”

At any time - ποτε - POTE. Particle of time meaning “some time or other, at any time, ever.”

Literally, “But to which of the angels has He ever said at any time.”

Now the writer begins the eighth quotation of the Old Testament from Psalm 110:1.

Sit on my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool? -

Sit - κάθου - KATHOU. Present middle imperative second person singular of the verb κάθημαι KATHEMAI. Means “to sit down, to be seated.”

PRESENT TENSE (dramatic) indicating that this is one of the most dramatic moments in history when a human being was commanded to sit down at the right hand of God the Father.

MIDDLE VOICE (reflexive) Indicating that the action goes back to the subject as the one producing the action. Literally, “Jesus Christ Himself” because He followed the plan of the Father perfectly.

IMPERATIVE MOOD (mood of direct command) God the Father gave God the Son a direct command to “**Sit**” at His right hand which is the place of highest honor.

PRINCIPLE: At the point of time when Jesus Christ was seated at the right hand of God the Father, humanity became superior to angels. That is, the humanity of Jesus Christ, the God-Man

Literally, “Sit down.”

On my right hand - ἐκ δεξιῶν μου – EK DEXION MOU. First of all we have the preposition EK plus the genitive case meaning “at, or on.” Then we have the genitive plural of the adjective δεξιός – DEXIOS meaning “right, as opposed to the left, the right hand, the right hand side.” In the ancient world the right hand side was always considered the place of highest honor, the highest dignity.

Until - ἕως – HEOS. Conjunction of time meaning “while, as long as, until.”

I make - θῶ – THO. Aorist active subjunctive first person singular of the verb τίθημι – TITHEMI. Means “to place, to set, to allocate, to assign, to appoint, to make.”

AORIST TENSE (constative) emphasizing the action in its entirety focusing on the events surrounding the Second Advent of Jesus Christ.

ACTIVE VOICE: God the Father produces the action of placing, or sitting, or assigning the enemies of Jesus Christ as the footstool for Jesus Christ.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: This mood is usually the mood of potential, but here it introduces an indefinite temporal clause. This clause is used in the Greek for a future event that is certain to come, although the exact time is unknown.

Literally, “Until I assign.”

Thine enemies - τοὺς ἐχθρούς σου – TOUS ECHTHROUS SOU. Literally, “The enemies of you.” First of all we have the definite article TOUS, which emphasizes the identity of the noun. Then we have the accusative masculine plural of the noun ἐχθρός – ECHTHROS meaning “hostile, an enemy, an adversary.” This refers to Satan, fallen angels, demons and all human unbelievers. Then we have the personal pronoun SOU referring to the Lord Jesus Christ.

Thy footstool - ὑποπόδιον – HUPOPODION meaning “a footstool.” τῶν ποδῶν σου – TON PODON SOU. This phrase is not brought out in the King James Version, but it is in the Greek text. TON is the definite article emphasizing the identity of the noun. Then we have the genitive plural of the noun πόυς – POUS meaning “feet.” Next we have the pronoun SOU referring to Jesus Christ. Literally, “A footstool for Your feet.”

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 13: But to which of the angels has He ever said at any time, “Sit at My right hand side until I assign Your enemies to be the footstool of your feet?”

The phrase “The footstool of your feet” was a sign of conquest in the ancient world. In the Roman world there were three signs of conquest.

1. Placing two spears in the ground about two or three feet apart and tying them together at the top. Then making all prisoners of war pass under the spears. That was one sign of conquest.
2. In a single struggle or hand-to-hand combat, when you disarmed your opponent and threw him to the ground, you would place your foot on his head and place your weapon (sword, spear or knife) at his throat. If he surrendered, he became a prisoner; if he wanted to continue to resist, you would kill him. Either way he loses.
3. The king of the conquering army would sit on his throne and have the enemy prisoners crawl up to the king’s feet on the throne, and then crawl away. This was a sign of conquest that the writer of Hebrews uses in this passage.

This is what happens to Satan, the fallen angels, demons and all the unbelievers of the human race. They prostrate themselves before the feet of Jesus Christ. Phil 2:9-11, **Therefore God** (the Father) **exalted him** (Jesus Christ) **to the highest place** (at the right hand side of God) **and gave him** (Jesus Christ) **the name that is above every name** (Hebrews 1:4, “He has obtained a more superior name”), (10) **that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow** (bend to the ground at the feet of Jesus Christ. This is the footstool concept), **in heaven** (Satan and fallen angels) **and on earth** (demons and unbelievers) **and under the earth** (unbelievers in Torment, and fallen angels in Tartarus), (11) **and every tongue confess** (acknowledge) **that Jesus Christ is Lord** (KURIOS, “deity and sovereign, is master over all”) **to the glory of God the Father.** (NIV) (Explanation provided by the author)

Doctrine of Operation Footstool

1. DEFINITION: Operation Footstool refers to the termination of the strategic victory of the angelic conflict, by which the Lord Jesus Christ returns to the earth to establish His kingdom and to remove Satan, fallen angels, demons and all the unsaved human beings. It is actually a coup d’etat whereby Satan loses the rulership of the world to the

Lord Jesus Christ. Psalm 110:1; Hebrews 1:13; Hebrews 10:13 says,**he waits for his enemies to be made his footstool**, (NIV)

2. The nation of Israel is currently under the discipline of God and no longer represents Jesus Christ on the earth. In 70 A.D. the Romans destroyed Jerusalem and the Jewish Temple. They took more than 100,000 Jews into slavery, killed more 700,000 Jews and dispersed hundreds of thousands all over the world. The Jews have been under the discipline of God for nearly 2,000 years.
3. Israel was destroyed as a nation representing God because of a maximum rejection of Biblical principles. Leviticus 26:27-39; Hosea 4:6, **My people are destroyed from lack of (Biblical) knowledge.....** (NIV)
4. The dispensation of Israel has been temporarily replaced by the dispensation of the Church. Ephesians 1:22-23, **And God** (the Father) **placed all things under his** (Jesus Christ) **feet and appointed him to be head over everything for the church** (not Israel), (23) **which is his body, the fullness of him who fills everything in every way.** (NIV) (Explanations provided by the author) See also Eph 4:4-5; 5:23-24; 5:30-32.

It should be noted that today, in this present age, any Jew who believes in Jesus Christ becomes a member of the body of Christ, or the church, just as a Gentile believer does. Therefore, in the Church Age the cursing of God is turned to blessing for the Jew who believes in Jesus Christ.

It should be noted that, at the Second Advent of Jesus Christ, the Jews will be restored as a nation and all of the unconditional covenants God promised them will be fulfilled.

The Abrahamic Covenant: this covenant actually began at the time of Abraham and will run through human history. It provides a race of people by which God's promised Messiah will come, and includes great blessings on all people through the Jewish race. It will reach its zenith in the Millennial Kingdom under Jesus Christ. Gen 12:1-3; 13:16; 26:1-4; 35:9-12; Ex 6:1-8. The Abrahamic Covenant is only promised to his descendants through Isaac and Jacob. No Arab tribe is recognized by God in the Abrahamic Covenant.

The Palestinian Covenant, or Land Covenant: this covenant deals with Israel's possession of the promised land. Gen 13:14-15; 15:18-21; 26:1-5; 28:13-15; Ex 6:1-8; Num 34:1-12.

In this covenant God is only recognizing the descendants of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. No Arab tribe is recognized by God in the land covenant.

The Davidic Covenant: this covenant promises a king to rule Israel from the line of David. II Sam 7:1-17;
Psalm 89:20-37.

The New Covenant to Israel: this covenant places Israel under a new system in the Millennial kingdom. Jer 31:31-34;
Hosea 2:14-23; Heb 8:8-12; 10:15-17.

5. Because of the Session of Jesus Christ, the angelic conflict has intensified during the Church Age (Eph 6:11-13). In fact, everything has changed. The Church Age brought about a radical change in the function of believers, because of the intensification of the angelic conflict. The function of believers has changed in that today we do not follow the Mosaic Law in order to receive blessing from God. We follow a higher law: The law of the filling of the Holy Spirit, which did not exist in the Age of Israel in the Old Testament. Romans 8:2-4, **.....because through Christ Jesus the law of the Spirit of life set me free from the law of sin of death. (3) For what the law was powerless to do in that it was weakened by the sinful nature, God did by sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful man to be a sin offering. And so he condemned sin in sinful man, (4) in order that the righteous requirements of the law might be fully met in us, who do not live according to the sinful nature but according to the Spirit.** (NIV)

Because through Christ Jesus the law of the Spirit of life - This is a genitive of source in the Greek. The Holy Spirit is the source of the new law. This law gives new life to all who place their faith in Jesus Christ and in the truth revealed in the Word of God. This new law also gives us a new position. Rom 8:1 speaks of being free from judgment **“in Christ Jesus.”** Our new position as of the moment of our faith in Christ is union with Christ. This is a permanent position. Before our salvation we were all in Adam, **.....in Adam all die.** But when we place our faith in the Lord Jesus Christ the Holy Spirit places us into union with Christ, therefore, **.....in Christ all will be made alive.** (I Cor 15:22) (NIV)

Rom 8:3; **For what the law was powerless to do** - Literally, “For what the Mosaic Law could not do.” Rom 7:12 tells us that the Mosaic

Law was good, holy and it was perfect, but it was limited. It had no power. It could not give life, it only brought cursing and death, Gal 3:10 says, **All who rely on observing the law are under a curse, for it is written** (in Deut 27:26): **“Cursed is everyone who does not continue to do everything written in the Book of the Law.”** (NIV)

In that it was weakened by the sinful nature - In other words, the Law was weak in that it had no power over the genetically formed sin nature found in every human being.

God sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful man - Jesus Christ was perfect in His humanity. He did not possess a sinful nature; that is what made Him different from all other human beings.

To be a sin offering - He had to be perfect and impeccable in order to be qualified, by God's standards, to go to the cross and be the perfect sacrifice for all the sins of the entire human race.

And so he condemned sin in sinful man - The aorist tense speaks of a once and for all action. Literally, “And so he condemned sin in sinful man, once and for all.”

Rom 8:4 **In order that the righteous requirements of the law might be fully met in us** - Literally, “With the result that the righteous requirements of the law might be fully accomplished in us.”

Who do not live according to the sinful nature - Literally, “Who do not live our lives according to the standard of the sinful nature.”

But according to the Spirit - Literally, “But according to the standard of the Spirit.” This refers to the application of Bible doctrine in the filling of the Holy Spirit.

The believer in the Church Age has been released from the Mosaic Law, and any other religious laws that have a set of rules and regulations. The Mosaic Law or any other religious law can give no one the desire or the power to obey the laws of God.

Today the believer is under a new law, the law of love, as Paul tells us in Gal 5:14. This new law of love is not a set of written commandments, but an ethical and spiritual dynamic produced in the life by the Holy Spirit, who gives both the desire and the power to live a life pleasing to God. The Holy Spirit exercises a much stronger and

stricter control over the life of the believer, and is far more efficient in producing divine good than the Mosaic Law or any religious system could ever do.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION OF ROMANS 8:2-4, "For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus has once and for all set me free from the law of sin and death. For what the Mosaic Law could not do, in that it was weak and powerless in the realm of the sinful nature, God sending His own Son in the likeness of sinful man, and as a sin offering, condemned sin in sinful man, in order that the righteousness of the law might be met in us who do not live our lives according to the standard of the sinful nature, but according to the standard of the Holy Spirit."

The Mosaic Law is obsolete. It has been canceled. It has been made null and void by the work of Jesus Christ on the cross. Therefore, we are not under the Mosaic Law in any way, shape or form. We are under grace, and under grace we have a greater calling than Israel had under the Mosaic Law. We have greater responsibility than simply following a set of written do's and don'ts.

Romans 3:21-22, **But now a righteousness from God, apart from law, has been made known, to which the Law and the Prophets testify. (22) This righteousness from God comes through faith in Jesus Christ to all who believe. There is no difference, (23) for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God.....** (NIV)

Romans 6:14, **.....you are not under law, but under grace.** (NIV)

Romans 7:6, **.....we have been released from the law so that we serve in the new way of the Spirit, and not in the old way of the written code.** (NIV)

Romans 11:6, **And if by grace, then it is no longer by works; if it were, grace would no longer be grace.** (NIV)

Galatians 3:11-12, **.....the righteous will live by faith. (12) The law is not based on faith.....** (NIV)

In the past, angels were the teachers of the prophets. Angels gave the law to Moses in segments. Angels were teachers in the Old Testament. Teachers in the sense that they were partly responsible for providing revelation for the writing of Scripture, Gal 3:19b, **The law was put into effect through angels by a mediator.** (NIV) In other words, it was angels who taught the writers of Scripture, and the Levitical priests taught from the written scroll. But angels, prophets and

priests have been replaced by teachers having a new spiritual gift—called pastor-teachers. And all of this started on the basis of the Resurrection, Ascension and Session of Jesus Christ to the right hand side of God the Father.

Therefore, Israel has been temporarily replaced by the Church, and the Church is composed of both Jews and Gentiles who have placed their faith in the Lord Jesus Christ.

6. The body of Jesus Christ, the Church, is being prepared on the earth by means of the baptism of the Holy Spirit, in which every one who places his faith in Jesus Christ is entered into union with Christ. I Cor 12:13, **For we were all baptized** (the word “baptism” means “to be identified with”) **by one Spirit into one body – whether Jews or Greeks, slave or free – and we were all given the one Spirit to drink.** (NIV) (Explanation provided by the author)

When you believed in Jesus Christ as your personal Savior and were saved, at that very moment God the Holy Spirit came into your body to dwell, and also placed you in Jesus Christ, positionally. Before you were saved, you were in Adam, **“in Adam all die,”** but when you placed your faith in Christ and were saved God the Holy Spirit placed you in Christ, **“in Christ will all be made alive.”** (I Cor 15:22). In other words, in spiritual death you were all identified with Adam, and in your spiritual life you are all identified with Christ. That is the baptism of the Holy Spirit. Therefore, at the moment of salvation every one receives simultaneously the indwelling of the Holy Spirit, the filling of the Holy Spirit and the baptism of the Holy Spirit.

The indwelling of the Holy Spirit is permanent, it never changes; the baptism of the Holy Spirit is permanent, it never changes. But the filling of the Holy Spirit is temporary. It only lasts until you commit a sin. But the filling of the Holy Spirit can be regained by simply confessing or acknowledging the sin to God privately, according to I John 1:9. **If we confess** (acknowledge) **our sins, he is faithful and just and will forgive us our sins** (the ones we know about and acknowledge to Him) **and purify us from all unrighteousness** (if we name the ones we are aware of, He will cleanse us from the sins we commit that we are not aware of). (NIV) (Explanation provided by the author)

7. When the body of Jesus Christ on the earth (the church) is completed, when it has all of the members that God has authorized, it will be removed from the devil’s world by means of the Rapture and

resurrection of all Church Age believers. I Cor 15:51-57, **Listen, I tell you a mystery** (something that has never been revealed before): **We will not all sleep** (in death), **but we will all be changed – (52) in a flash, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trumpet. For the trumpet will sound, the dead will be raised imperishable, and we will be changed. (53) For the perishable must clothe itself with the imperishable, and the mortal with immortality. (54) When the perishable has been clothed with the imperishable, and the mortal with immortality, then the saying that is written will come true:** (quotation from Isaiah 25:8) **“Death has been swallowed up in victory.”**

(55) (Quotation from Hosea 13:14) **“Where, O death, is your victory? Where, O death, is your sting?”**

(56) **The sting of death is sin, and the power of sin is the law.**

(57) **But thanks be to God! He gives us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.** (NIV) (Explanation provided by the author) It should be noted that when most of the New Testament writers quoted the Old Testament, they usually quoted the Greek translation from the Hebrew called the Septuagint. There were times when they also quoted from a Hebrew manuscript. That is why when we try to compare the New Testament reference to the original quotation it may not be exactly word for word.

Paul describes the Rapture in I Thess 4:16-18, **For the Lord himself will come down from heaven, with a loud command, with the voice of the archangel and with the trumpet call of God, and the dead in Christ will rise first. (17) After that, we who are still alive and are left will be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air. And so we will be with the Lord forever. (18) Therefore encourage each other with these words.** (NIV) The word “rapture” is a technical word for the resurrection of the Church Age believers only.

8. The entire body of Christ on the earth, becomes the bride of Christ at the point of the Rapture. The words “bride of Christ” refers to all Church Age believers in resurrection body. This phrase only applies to the Church, no other believer from any other dispensation. Rev 19:7, **Let us rejoice and be glad and give him glory! For the wedding of the Lamb has come, and his bride has made herself ready.** (NIV) Once in heaven the bride is prepared for the wedding supper, which will occur at the Second Advent. Rev 19:8-9, **“Fine linen, bright and clean, was given her to wear.” (Fine linen stands for the righteous acts of the saints.) (9) “Then the angel said to me “Write: ‘Blessed are those who are invited to the wedding**

supper of the Lamb!’ And he added, “These are the true words of God.” (NIV)

9. The bride enters into ultimate sanctification by receiving a resurrection body like Christ’s. Phil 3:21, **.....Who, by the power that enables him to bring everything under his control, will transform our lowly bodies so that they will be like his glorious body. (NIV)**

I John 3:1-2, **How great is the love the Father has lavished on us, that we should be called children of God! And that is what we are! The reason the world does not know us is that it did not know him. (2) Dear friends, now we are children of God, and what we will be has not yet been made known. But we know that when he appears, we shall be like him, for we shall see him as he is. (NIV)**

10. Therefore, in receiving a body like that of Christ’s, the bride no longer possesses an old sin nature. I Thess 5:23-24, **May God himself, the God of peace, sanctify you through and through. May your whole spirit, soul and body be kept blameless at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ. (24) The one who calls you is faithful and he will do it. (NIV)**
11. The bride is cleansed from all human good. There is no place in heaven for human good. I Cor 3:12-15, **If any man builds on this foundation** (first class conditional clause indicating a true statement, “and he does, “ referring to the foundation of salvation in Jesus Christ), **using gold, silver, costly stones** (these refer to divine good in spiritual production), **wood, hay or straw** (these refer to human good in religious works and deeds), (13) **his work** (his production) **will be shown for what it is, because the Day** (the Judgment Seat of Christ, as per II Cor 5:10;) **will bring it to light. It will be revealed with fire, and the fire will test the quality of each man’s work** (each man’s production). (14) **If what he has built survives** (and some will), **he will receive his reward. (15) If it is burned up** (and all human production will be), **he will suffer loss** (loss of reward, not loss of salvation); **but he himself will be saved** (delivered), **but only as one escaping through the flames. (NIV)** (Explanation provided by the author)
12. The bride returns to the earth with Christ at His second advent. I Thess 3:13, **May he strengthen your hearts so that you will be blameless and holy in the presence of our God and Father when our Lord Jesus comes with all his holy ones. (NIV)**

Revelation 19:6-16, **Then I heard what sounded like a great multitude, like the roar of rushing waters, and like loud peals of**

thunder, shouting: “Hallelujah! For our Lord God Almighty reigns. (7) Let us rejoice and be glad and give him glory! For the wedding of the Lamb has come, and his bride has made herself ready. (8) Fine linen, bright and clean, was given her to wear.” (Fine linen stands for the righteous acts of the saints.)

(9) Then the angel said to me, “Write: ‘Blessed are those who are invited to the wedding supper of the Lamb!’” And he added, “These are the true words of God” (10) At this I fell at his feet to worship him. But he said to me, “Do not do it! I am a fellow servant with you and with your brothers who hold to the testimony of Jesus. Worship God! For the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy.”

(11) I saw heaven standing open and there before me was a white horse, whose rider is called Faithful and True. With justice he judges and makes war. (12) His eyes are like blazing fire, and on his head are many crowns. He has a name written on him that no one knows but he himself. (13) He is dressed in a robe dipped in blood, and his name is the Word of God. (14) The armies of heaven were following him, riding on white horses and dressed in fine linen, white and clean. (15) Out of his mouth comes a sharp sword with which to strike down the nations. (quotation from Psalm 2:9) “He will rule them with an iron scepter.” He treads the winepress of the fury of the wrath of God Almighty. (16) On his robe and on his thigh he has this name written: **KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS. (NIV)**

13. Then comes Operation Footstool. This event actually occurs at the Second Advent.
 - A. First comes the triumphal procession, in which Satan, all fallen angels and demons are disarmed by Jesus Christ and publicly displayed. Col 2:15, **And having disarmed the powers and authorities, he made a public spectacle of them, triumphing over them by the cross.** (NIV) Powers and authorities refers to those in the spirit world.
 - B. Second, Satan is imprisoned for one thousand years. Rev 20:1-3, **And I saw an angel coming down out of heaven, having the key to the Abyss and holding in his hand a great chain. (2) He seized the dragon, that ancient serpent, who is the devil, or Satan, and bound him for a thousand years. (3) He threw him into the Abyss, and locked and sealed it over him, to keep him from deceiving the nations anymore until the thousand years were ended.** (NIV)

14. After the removal of Satan and all fallen angels from the earth, the rulership of Christ changes the environment of the earth during the Millennial Kingdom.

- A. Religion is removed. I Cor 10:20-21, **.....but the sacrifices of pagans are offered to demons, not to God, and I do not want you to be participants with demons. (21) You cannot drink the cup of the Lord and the cup of demons too; you cannot have a part in both the Lord's table and the table of demons.** (NIV) The word "religion" is only found four times in the epistles, and three times it refers to that which is bad, wrong and against the plan of God. Therefore, you cannot have perfect environment as long as you have religion on the earth. (the four times the word religion is used: Gal 1:13 and Gal 1:14 speak of the Jew's religion. James 1:16 speaks of man's religions, and James 1:27 speaks of pure religion.)

PRINCIPLE: There can be no perfect environment on the earth with religion present, and Jesus Christ is the only One who has the power to remove all religion.

- B. False doctrine will be removed. I Timothy 4:1, **The Spirit clearly says that in the later times some will abandon the faith and follow deceiving spirits and things taught by demons.** (NIV) This is occurring now at the present time, but there will be no false doctrine taught during the thousand year reign of Jesus Christ. He will not allow any dissenting opinions. This will make it very difficult for those believers who knew false doctrine and survived the tribulation period. During the tribulation period there will be a great amount of false doctrine taught, and many believers will succumb to the false teachings of the antichrist and his worldwide propaganda of evil policies. The believers who survive the tribulation and move into the Millennial kingdom after the second advent of Jesus Christ will hear unadulterated truth from Jesus Christ. Many of these believers will have a difficult time in believing the truth because they previously heard and believed many things that were not true.
- C. Spirituality will change to include ecstasies and emotion. With Jesus Christ personally present on the earth, there will be no counterfeit doctrine, which means there will be no counterfeit emotion. Joel 2:28-29, **And afterward** (after the tribulation period, and after the Second Advent of Jesus Christ), **I will pour out my Spirit on all people. Your sons and daughters will prophesy, your old men will dream dreams, your young men will see visions. (29) Even on my servants, both men**

and women, I will pour out my Spirit in those days. (NIV)
(Explanation provided by the author)

- D. There will be perfect environment on the earth. Isaiah 2:4, **He will judge between the nations and will settle disputes for many peoples. They will beat their swords into plowshares and their spears into pruning hooks. Nation will not take up sword against nation, nor will they train for war anymore.** (NIV) This will be the only time since the fall of man in the Garden of Eden that there will be universal peace on the earth without any tyranny or slavery. This is the antithesis of what Jesus said would occur on the earth before He returns: Matthew 24:6-8, **“You will hear of wars and rumors of wars, but see to it that you are not alarmed. Such things must happen, but the end is still to come. (7) Nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom. There will be famines and earthquakes in various places. (8) All these are the beginning of birth pains.”** (NIV) In other words, all these things must occur and they will continue throughout human history until Jesus Christ returns. There is no means of stopping wars, famines and earthquakes; only Jesus Christ can do that. Remember that Isaiah 9:6 tells us the Jesus Christ is called **“the Prince of Peace.”** (KJV and NIV)

Isaiah tells us about the kingdom reign of the Jewish Messiah, Jesus Christ. Isaiah 11:6-9, **The wolf will live with the lamb, the leopard will lie down with the goat, the calf and the lion and the yearling together; and a little child will lead them. (7) The cow will feed with the bear, their young will lie down together, and the lion will eat straw like the ox. (8) The infant will play near the hole of the cobra, and the young child put his hand into the viper’s nest. (9) They will neither harm nor destroy on all my holy mountain, for the earth will be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea.** (NIV)

The weather will also be perfect. There will be no winters on the earth. There will be a subtropical climate over all the earth just as before the flood in Noah’s time in Genesis chapter six. There will be no deserts. In fact, the deserts will become fruitful. Isaiah 35:1-2, **The desert and the parched land will be glad; the wilderness will rejoice and blossom. Like the crocus, (2) it will burst into bloom; it will rejoice greatly and shout for joy. The glory of Lebanon will be given to it, the splendor of Carmel and Sharon; they will see the glory of the Lord, the splendor of our God.** (NIV)

There will be no starvation because there will be plenty of food. Even the poor will have all the food they need.

Also, in this perfect environment, crime will be detected and punished immediately. Some cases will receive capital punishment. There will be no such thing as “due process” in the kingdom of Jesus Christ. Due process will be instant punishment for the offender.

Crime will be the only reason for death in the Millennial kingdom of Jesus Christ. Death will take a holiday during this time. There will be no diseases, no illnesses or deformities in human beings: all will be perfect.

All of this points out to us how impossible it is for man to establish perfect environment on the earth. It should also be noted that neither Satan nor any other angel has the power to establish perfect environment on the earth. That wonderful job is reserved for our Lord Jesus Christ and no one else.

- E. Perfect environment will exist on the earth until Satan is released from the Abyss and leads the Gog revolution. Revelation 20:7-10, **When the thousand years are over, Satan will be released from his prison (8) and will go out to deceive the nations in the four corners of the earth – Gog and Magog – to gather them for battle. In number they are like the sand on the seashore. (9) They marched across the breadth of the earth and surrounded the camp of God’s people, the city he loves. But fire came down from heaven and devoured them. (10) And the devil, who deceived them, was thrown into the lake of burning sulfur, where the beast and the false prophet had been thrown. They will be tormented day and night for ever and ever.** (NIV)

Therefore, Operation Footstool refers to the total defeat of Satan, his angels and demons. The Lord will make their defeat is a public spectacle. Then He will set up His perfect eternal kingdom after all judgments have taken place.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 13: “But to which of the angels has He ever said at any time, ‘Sit at My right hand side until I assign Your enemies to be the footstool of your feet?’”

Hebrews 1:14;

Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be heirs of salvation? (KJV)

Verse fourteen gives us the result of the superiority of Jesus Christ over angels. Here the writer of Hebrews sums up the function of the angels as compared to that of the Son. He is the highest dignitary, a co-ruler with God the Father. Angels are His servants, appointed to minister to the heirs of salvation.

Are they not all - This refers to angels. As a result of Operation Footstool all the fallen angels are going to be removed from the earth. And immediately many will ask, "What happens to the elect angels?" Well, we already know what they are going to do. They are already the servants of believers, and that is what they are going to be forever, the servants of believers.

All who are saved have a guardian angel, or a servant angel right now, at this very moment. And in the eternal state we may have an entire staff of angel servants, depending upon our needs in the eternal state in a resurrection body.

Angels who are now superior to us are going to be our servants. All Church Age believers are going to be served by angels for all eternity. All of us who have believed in Jesus Christ and are saved have at least one servant angel now. He is called a guardian angel. We can't see this servant angel, and we cannot give him orders. He takes his orders from our heavenly Father.

But the principle is this: What Jesus did through His work is so perfect that the angels are now the servants of believers who accept Jesus Christ. This includes all Church Age believers: Carnal believers, negative believers and immoral believers. If you can picture the worst Christian who ever lived, even he has a servant angel.

In the ancient world slaves took care of the children in the homes of their masters. They protected them, they traveled with them to make sure they wouldn't get lost, they took them to school, they brought them home from school, they accompanied them on almost every family outing. Even though the child in the Greek or Roman homes had a slave guardian, he could not give his slave guardian any orders. Only the father could give the slave orders concerning his children. This is the same concept that we have here in our passage regarding the guardian angels who have responsibility over us. They are our slaves, our servants, but we cannot give them any orders, only our heavenly Father can do that.

But in the eternal kingdom, in our resurrection bodies we will give orders to our angel servants.

Galatians 3:24; (KJV)

Vs 24: **Wherefore the law was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ, that we might be justified by faith.**

Wherefore - ὥστε – HOSTE. Conjunctive particle meaning “so that, in order that, therefore, consequently.”

The law - ὁ νόμος – HO NOMOS. Nominative singular plus the definite article HO. The use of the definite article emphasizes the “identity” of the noun, here it refers to the Mosaic Law.

Was our schoolmaster -

Was - γέγομεν – GEGOMEN. Perfect active indicative third person singular of the verb γίνομαι – GINOMAI. Means “to become, to come into existence.”

PERFECT TENSE (intensive), literally, “The law and only the law became our schoolmaster.”

ACTIVE VOICE: the subject produces the action of the verb. The law produced the action of becoming our schoolmaster. That was its purpose.

INDICATIVE MOOD (declarative) for the absolute fact of the reality that the Mosaic Law “was our schoolmaster.”

Schoolmaster - παιδαγωγός – PAIDAGOGOS. This is a nominative masculine singular in the Greek. Our English word “pedagogue” comes from this word, meaning “a school teacher, or a school master.” But the Greek word PAIDAGOGOS does not mean a schoolteacher.

This Greek word “PAIDAGOGOS” referred to a slave guardian who had general charge over a child from the age of about six to sixteen in Greek and Roman families. He watched over their overt behavior and took charge over them whenever they went from home. This slave guardian was entrusted with the moral supervision of the child, but his job was not to teach the child. His duties were a lot different from that of a schoolmaster.

PRINCIPLE: This word refers to a slave guardian of a minor child rather than a teacher or schoolmaster.

Literally, “Therefore, the law came into existence as our slave guardian.”

To bring us to Christ -

To bring us - Not in the Greek text.

To - εἰς – EIS. Preposition meaning “to, as far as, until, into.”

Literally, “Therefore, the law became our slave guardian unto Christ.”

That we might be justified by faith -

That - ἵνα – HINA. Conjunction used to introduce a purpose clause. Literally, “In order that.”

We might be justified - δικαιωθῶμεν – DIKAIOTHOMEN. First aorist passive subjunctive first person plural of the verb δικαιόω – DIKAIŌO. Means “to vindicate, to make righteous, to justify.”

AORIST TENSE (constative), this is known as a “once and for all” aorist.

PASSIVE VOICE: the subject receives the action of the verb. The believer receives “justification” by means of his faith in the Lord Jesus Christ.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, the mood of potential. Justification depends upon the individual’s free will.

By faith -

By - ἐκ – EK. Preposition meaning “from, out from, the source of.” This preposition refers to source or origin.

EXPANDED TRANSLATION OF GALATIANS 3:24: “Therefore, the Mosaic Law came into existence and became our slave guardian to escort us to Christ, in order that we might receive justification by means of faith.”

The Mosaic Law was the guardian of Israel, keeping watch over those committed to its care, accompanying them with its commands and prohibitions, keeping them in a condition of dependence and restraint and continually revealing to them their sins as a positive transgression against God. Today, the law, under the principles of establishment, escorted us to school, referring to salvation through Jesus Christ, and after that he was dismissed, and now we are under a higher law, **“The law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus”** (Rom 8:2; KJV)

Summary Principles: Comparing Heb 1:14 to Gal 3:24;

1. The slave guardian protected the child (the heir) at all times. He was not the formal teacher, but he kept the child (the heir) safe so he could grow and learn and develop into a responsible adulthood.
2. The slave guardian in Gal 3:24 is an analogy to the Mosaic Law, and the angels were responsible in communicating that law to Moses and the prophets. Therefore, like the law (which the angels administered), the angels are the slave guardians to believers in the Church Age. The guardian angels are to protect the child of God (the heir) at all times. He is not a formal teacher, he is a slave guardian. The formal teacher in the Church Age is the Holy Spirit.
3. Just as the slave guardian in the ancient world was not allowed to take his orders from the children he was protecting, but only from the father, neither are the guardian angels for the children of God in the Church Age allowed to take any orders from the children they are protecting, but only from God the Father.
4. Although the Mosaic Law was a system of bondage for those who were under it, the angels who helped administer the Mosaic Law are now slaves or servants to those who are free from that law: all Church Age believers.

Hebrews 1:14;

The phrase, “**Are they not all,**” refers to the elect or saved angels. We studied in Heb 1:13 that the fallen angels are enemies of the Lord and they will be defeated and sentenced to the Lake of Fire after the Second Advent of Jesus Christ. They will be “The footstool of His feet” along with Satan.

Hebrews 1:14 tells about the job of the elect angels.

Literally, “Are they not all,”

Ministering spirits -

Ministering - λειτουργικά – LEITOURGIKA. Nominative plural of the adjective λειτουργικός – LEITOURGIKOS. Means “a subordinate servant, a slave.”

Thanks to liberalism there are many people who have the idea that being a subordinate in life is incompatible with the dignity of man. That is an evil lie that comes from the thinking of Satan. Some people are miserable in their souls because they are in subordination to someone else. Many people are called by God to be a subordinate to serve others. Serving others is one of the highest callings that God gives to anyone. Matt 20:26b-28, **.....whoever wants to become great among you must be your servant, (27) and whoever wants to be first must be your slave – (28) just as the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give his life as a ransom for many.** (NIV) Mark 9:35, **Sitting down, Jesus called the Twelve and said, “If anyone wants to be first, he must be the very last, and the servant of all.”** (NIV) Even the words of Jesus confirm the fact that it is those who are servants to others who are the greatest in the kingdom of God. See also Mark 10:43-45.

When the teachings of the world encroach upon the church, it destroys the spirituality of the children of God. The Bible teaches contentment for the believer in Jesus Christ, while the world teaches personal advancement, personal self-esteem and doing what makes you feel good. The Bible clearly teaches that to the believer in Jesus Christ true contentment can only come by learning and growing in the Word of God. Phil 4:11b-13, **.....for I have learned to be content whatever the circumstances. (12) I know what it is to be in need, and I know what it is to have plenty. I have learned the secret of being content in any and every situation, whether well fed or hungry, whether living in plenty or in want. (13) I can do everything through him who gives me strength.** (NIV)

The elect angels who are our slave guardians are not reluctant in any way to become our slaves. Angels who are superior to you and me by creation are taking the place of subordination, as slave guardians, and they are happy to do it.

Literally, “Are they not all subordinate servants.”

Spirits - πνεύματα – PNEUMATA. Nominative plural of the noun πνεῦμα – PNEUMA. Means “wind, breath, air, spirit and Spirit.” Here it refers to angels. Their bodies are spirit and they live in the spiritual realm.

Sent forth - ἀποστελλόμενα – APOSTELLOMENA. Present passive participle nominative neuter plural of the verb ἀποστελλω – APOSTELLO. Means “to send forth on a special mission, to send forth into action.” These elect angels are “sent forth” into action as “subordinate servants.”

PRESENT TENSE (customary) denoting that which occurs at successive intervals. God the Father “sends forth” a guardian angel each time an individual believes in the Lord Jesus Christ.

PASSIVE VOICE: the subject receives the action of the verb. These elect angels receive the commission to go forth only to believers in Jesus Christ.

PARTICIPLE (Telic) denoting purpose. The purpose for all Church Age believers receiving at least one guardian angel is because of the increased intensity of the spiritual war since the strategic victory of Jesus Christ through His work on the cross.

Literally, “Are not they all subordinate servants, spirits being sent forth into action.”

To minister - εἰς διακονίαν – EIS DIAKONIAN. First of all we have the preposition EIS, plus the accusative singular of the noun διακονία – DIAKONIA meaning “service, the act of rendering service, servitude, ministry.” This is where we get our English word “deacon.” DIAKONIA originally meant, “to be an under rower.” To row on the bottom deck was the worst place to row. The under rower was the first one to drown if the ship started sinking. It was also hotter in the lower decks, and it was more difficult work. Over the centuries this word came to mean “a simple servant, a table waiter, one who helped others.”

Literally, “Are not they all subordinate servants, spirits being sent into action for the purpose of service.”

For them - διὰ τοὺς – DIA TOUS. First of all we have the preposition DIA plus the accusative case meaning “because of.” Then we have the definite article TOUS used as a pronoun. Literally, “Because of the ones.”

Who shall be - μέλλοντας – MELLONTAS. Present active participle accusative masculine plural of the verb μέλλω – MELLO. Means “to be about to, to be on the point of.” This word serves to express in general a settled future. A future as distinguished from past and present. Something that is permanent and unchangeable.

Heirs of salvation -

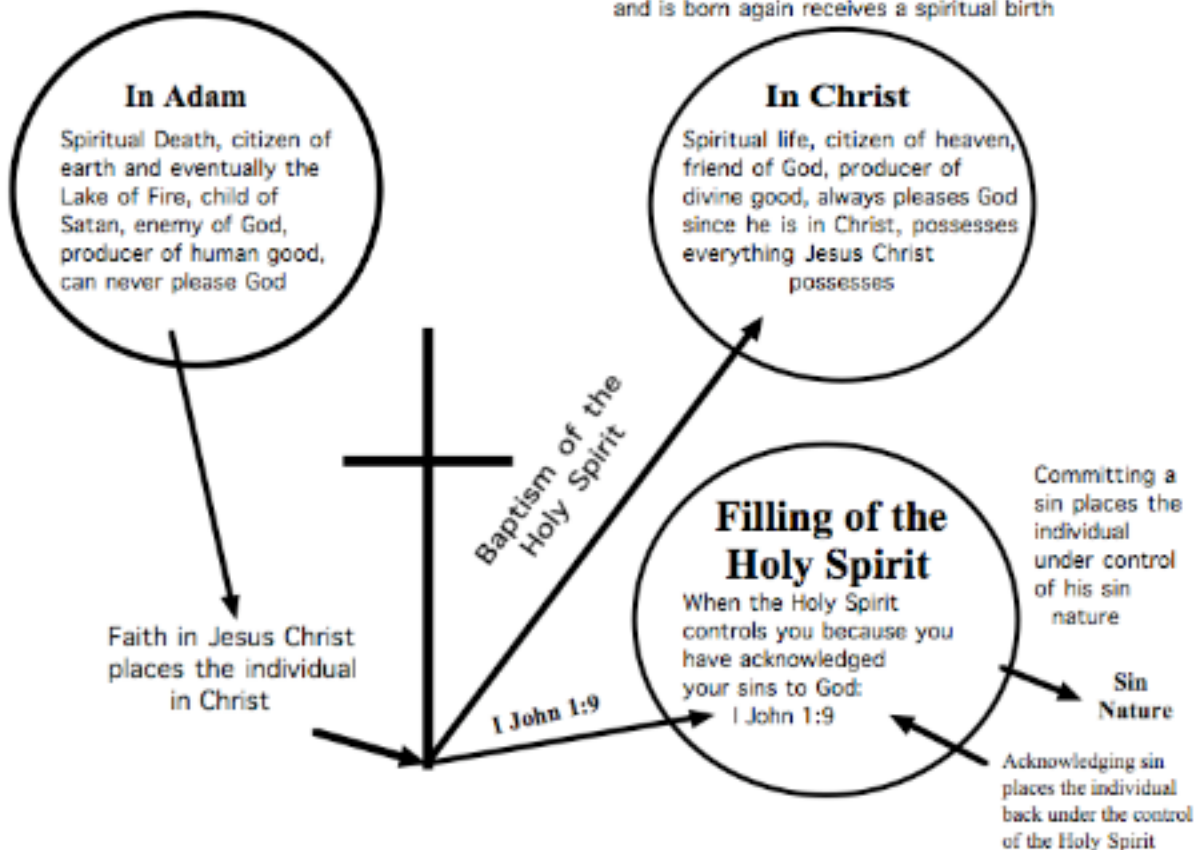
Heirs - κληρονομεῖν – KLERONOMEIN. Present active infinitive of the verb κληρονομέω – KLERONOMEIO. Means “to inherit.”

Of salvation - σωτηρίαν – SOTERIAN. Accusative singular of the noun σωτηρία – SOTERIA. Means “salvation, deliverance.” This refers to deliverance from the devil’s world. We are delivered from the devil’s world the moment we believe in the Lord Jesus Christ in the sense of moving from

being “**in Adam**” to being “**in Christ**.” (I Cor 15:22). But this deliverance is made complete the moment we die and go to heaven, or the moment we are raptured and receive our perfect resurrection body.

Every human being at the point of physical birth

Every human being who has placed faith in Jesus Christ and is born again receives a spiritual birth



Positional Truth Chart

EXPANDED TRANSLATION VERSE 14: “Are not they all subordinate servants, spirits being sent into action for the purpose of service because of the ones (Church Age believers) being about to inherit deliverance.”

The guardian angel is a servant to you. He is an elect angel, and yet he is your servant. The question often arises: “Why do we have elect angels serving us now?” The answer is because positionally we are in union with Jesus Christ as of the moment of our salvation, and Christ is superior to all angels. And since we are in Christ positionally, and since we are positionally superior to angels then it follows logically that angels are our servants now.

Summary Principles

1. It is Jesus’ destiny to reign forever. It is the destiny of angels to serve forever those who are about to inherit deliverance from the devil’s world. What a wonderful, fantastic and awesome future Christians have. In addition to being in the Lord’s presence forever, our destiny is to be served by angels forever.

2. II Kings 6:15-17, Elisha and his servant were once threatened by the king of Syria and had no means to defend themselves. **When the servant of the man of God got up and went out early the next morning, an army with horses and chariots had surrounded the city. “Oh, my lord, what shall we do?” the servant asked.**

(16) **“Don’t be afraid,” the prophet answered. “Those who are with us are more than those who are with them.” (17) And Elisha prayed, “O Lord, open his eyes so he may see.” Then the Lord opened the servant’s eyes, and he looked and saw the hills full of horses and chariots of fire all around Elisha.** (NIV)

Who had the horses and who were in the chariots? Angels. Angels protect and deliver the believer from temporal danger.

The story of Elisha is an Old Testament example regarding angels protecting God’s people. But in the Church Age angels have a greater responsibility. In the Old Testament they were only sent to a few of God’s servants to protect them, but in the Church Age all believers are given at least one guardian angel.

3. Angels rescued Lot and his family, taking them by force out of the city of Sodom. (Genesis chapter 19:15-16).
4. An angel went down into the lions’ den with Daniel and shut the lions’ mouths. (Daniel 6:21).
5. Angels ministered to the founders of the early church. (The book of Acts).
6. Angels minister to us (Heb 1:14). What a comforting and encouraging truth. Their destiny is to continue to minister to us throughout all eternity.
7. Jesus Christ is superior to angels in every way. He is the Messiah, He is God in the flesh. He is the Mediator of a New Covenant, a covenant that is much better than the old one.
8. In this first chapter of Hebrews we have seen the deity of Jesus Christ established by divine names. He is called “Son,” “God,” and “Lord.” By divine works He creates, sustains, governs, redeems and purges (eliminates) sin. By divine worth He is the One to be worshiped by the angels and all other creatures in the universe. By divine attributes He is omniscient, omnipotent, unchanging and eternal. In all these ways the superiority of Jesus Christ is proclaimed.

9. Why did the writer emphasize these truths? Because in Hebrews chapter two he will give us the reason for emphasizing the truths concerning the Lord Jesus Christ. Hebrews 2:1-3 says, **“Therefore, (because of the truths taught in chapter one) we ought to give the more earnest heed to the things which we have heard, lest at any time we should let them slip. (2) For if the word spoken by angels was steadfast, and every transgression and disobedience received a just recompense of reward; (3) How shall we escape, if we neglect so great salvation; which at the first began to be spoken by the Lord, and was confirmed unto us by them that heard him. (KJV)**

Chapter two will pick up where chapter one leaves off, with the study of angels. The writer of Hebrews will continue to quote the Old Testament to prove that his teaching is from God and not from man. We need to keep in mind the the writer of the book of Hebrews is writing to Jews living in Jerusalem in about 67 AD, so the quotations of Old Testament passages are very important.

In 66 AD the Jews in Judea rebelled against their Roman occupiers. The fifth and tenth legions of the Roman army stationed in Alexandria, Egypt were dispatched to Judea by the Roman General Vespasian, who then gave the command of these men to his son Titus. Vespasian went to Syria and organized a Roman army from there. By 68 AD the Romans had taken control of all of northern Palestine. From there they focused on the city of Jerusalem. The Roman legions surrounded the city and began to slowly squeeze the life out of the Jewish stronghold. By the year 70 AD, after many months of starvation, and surviving many attacks, the Jewish defenders were totally worn out and dying of starvation. The attackers breached Jerusalem's outer walls and began a systematic ransacking of the city, killing, torturing and mutilating the bodies of all defenders of the city. The assault culminated in the burning and destruction of the Temple that served as the center of Judaism.

The historian Josephus estimated that “nearly one million, one hundred thousand Israelites had perished by famine or by the sword; and ninety-seven thousand, after the contest was at an end, remained to be divided among the conquerors, and were counted off like so many sheep in the pastures of Jordan. Of these, the youngest and best favoured were reserved to grace the triumphs of Titus and Vespasian in the Roman highways. (This refers to the triumphal procession of Titus and Vespasian after their great victory against the Jewish rebellion.) The males who were above seventeen years of age, were

sent in the direction of Egypt to be employed in the public works, or to take part in the combats of the circus, to be exhibited as the antagonists of wild beasts, or in the spectacles of the gladiators. Nor was theirs a happier fate who escaped this doom. Those who were under seventeen were destined to be exposed in the markets of Rome, there to administer to the indolent luxury or brutal passions of the wealthy sensualist.” (This was a quotation from The Complete Works of Flavius Josephus: Sequel to the History of the Jews, chapter 1, paragraph 3, page 628-29; translated by William Whiston, circa-1850, reprinted August 2008)

Many scholars believe that Josephus was exaggerating about the number of individuals affected by the fall and destruction of Jerusalem. But, even if he was, we do know from other historical records that this devastation brought death, torture and much suffering to the inhabitants of Jerusalem and the surrounding area.

The rebellion continued on for another three years and was finally extinguished in 73 AD with the fall of the various pockets of resistance including the stronghold at Masada. These are the things the writer of the epistle to the Hebrews was warning his readers about. He knew that only the learning and application of the Word of God in the filling of the Holy Spirit could bring about individual deliverance in times of great disaster.

The End

Hebrews Chapter One

Expanded Translation of Chapter One

Written in paragraph form

In many parts (of the Old Testament), and in many different ways (in the past), God spoke to our forefathers by means of the prophets. In these last days (of the Jewish Age), He (God the Father) has spoken to us (with finality) in His unique Son (Jesus Christ), whom He has appointed the Heir of all things, and through whom He (God the Father) designed the ages (dispensations). Who (Jesus Christ) being the radiance or shining forth of the glory and the exact image of His (God the Father's) essence, and maintaining all things by the verbal expression of His power, having Himself accomplished the purging (eliminating) of sins, sat down at the right hand

side of the Majesty on High. Having become more prominent (more superior) than angels, He has inherited a more superior name than they have.

For to which of the angels did He (God the Father) ever say at any time, “You are My Son, this day I have begotten you?” And again, “I will be to Him (Jesus Christ) and only to Him a Father, and He Himself shall be to me a Son?” But on the occasion when He (God the Father) again introduces the firstborn (the Chief One, Jesus Christ at the Second Advent) into the world He says, “And let all the angels of God worship him.” And with regard to the angels He says, (quotation from Psalm 45:6) “The One making His angels spirits and His servants a flame of fire.” But regarding the Son He (God the Father) says (in Psalm 45:6), “Your throne, O God (God the Son) is forever and ever, and the scepter (badge) of perfect establishment is the scepter (badge) of your kingdom.” You have loved the justice of perfect establishment, and you have hated the lawlessness of antiestablishment.

Because of this, God (the Father), even your God, has anointed you (Jesus Christ, God the Son) with the oil of exultation (the commission of exultation, the commission of extreme joy) above and beyond your human and angelic associates. You, and only You, Lord, at the beginning You have laid the foundations and established the earth and the heavens, which are the works of Your hands. They themselves shall be totally destroyed, but as for You, You remain permanent and unchanged. And all these shall become old and worn out just as does clothing. And just like a garment, You will fold them up (the heavens and the earth), and they will be changed (destroyed and replaced). But as for You, You keep on being unchanged, and Your years will not come to an end. But to which of the angels has He ever said at any time, “Sit at My right hand side until I assign Your enemies to be the footstool of your feet?” Are not they all subordinate servants, spirit beings sent into action for the purpose of service, because of the ones (Church Age believers) being about to inherit deliverance?

Acknowledgments and Bibliography

David D. Allen: former pastor of the Calvary Baptist Church in Hazel Park, Michigan. His expositional teaching and published notes on the Epistle to the Hebrews was a great source of information and inspirational reading.

William F. Arndt: “A Greek-English Lexicon of the New Testament and other Early Christian Literature,” translated by Walter Bauer. Copyright 1957 The University of Chicago Press Ltd., London.

Donald Grey Barnhouse: former pastor of the Tenth Presbyterian Church in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania. Dr Barnhouse was always in great demand as a Bible Conference Speaker. His book: *The Invisible War*: copyright 1965 by Zondervan Publishing House, Grand Rapids, Michigan.

E. M. Blaiklock: *The Pictorial Bible Atlas*: copyright 1969 by Zondervan Publishing House, Grand Rapids, Michigan.

F. F. Bruce: former professor of Biblical Criticism and Exegesis at the University of Manchester, England. His book: "The New International Commentary on the New Testament," *The Epistle to the Hebrews*: printed 1990 by William B. Eerdmans Publishing Company, All rights reserved.

E. W. Bullinger: A man of intense spirituality and ardent Biblical scholarship. His book: *Number in Scripture*: published in 1967 by Kregel Publications Grand Rapids, Michigan.

Lewis Sperry Chafer: *Systematic Theology*: copyright 1947 by Lewis Sperry Chafer, published by Dallas Seminary Press Dallas, Texas.

John J. Davis: former assistant Professor in Hebrew and Old Testament at Grace Theological Seminary at Winona Lake, Indiana. His book: *Biblical Numerology*: copyright 1968 by Baker Book House Company.

Wilbur Gingrich: "A Greek-English Lexicon of the New Testament and other Early Christian Literature," translated by Walter Bauer. Copyright 1957 The University of Chicago Press Ltd., London.

Gerhard Kittel: *Theological Dictionary of the New Testament*. Translated by Geoffrey W. Bromley: copyright 1964 by William B. Eerdmans Publishing Company, Grand Rapids, Michigan.

William L. Lane: former Professor of Religious Studies at Western Kentucky University. His book: "Word Biblical Commentary," volume 47 *Hebrews*: copyright 1991 by Word, Incorporated

R. C. H. Lenski: a Lutheran theologian known for his meticulous use of the Greek New Testament. His "Commentary on the New Testament," volume 10 *The Interpretation of the Epistle to the Hebrews*: printed 1966 by Augsburg Publishing House.

John F. MacArthur, Jr.: pastor of Grace Community Church in Sun Valley, California. His book: *The MacArthur New Testament Commentary, Hebrews*: copyright 1983 by The Moody Bible Institute of Chicago.

George Milligan: The Vocabulary of the Greek Testament: copyright 1930, printed by William B. Eerdmans Publishing Company, Grand Rapids, Michigan.

James H. Moulton: The Vocabulary of the Greek Testament: copyright 1930, printed by William B. Eerdmans Publishing Company, Grand Rapids, Michigan.

Harold K. Moulton: The Analytical Greek Lexicon Revised: copyright 1978 by Zondervan Corporation, Grand Rapids, Michigan.

Charles F. Pfeiffer: The Bible Atlas: copyright 1961 by Baker Book House Company.

Arthur W. Pink: former pastor, and Bible conference speaker and author of numerous books. His book: “An Exposition of Hebrews: copyright 1954 by I.C. Herendeen, Swengel (Union County) Pa.

Charles Van der Pool: The Editor-in-Chief of “The Apostolic Bible.” The Apostolic Bible includes the entire Septuagint, a Greek and English translation.

A. T. Robertson: former instructor and professor of New Testament Greek at the Southern Baptist Theological Seminary, Louisville, Kentucky. His commentary: “Word Pictures of the New Testament,” volume V The Epistle to the Hebrews: copyright 1932 by Sunday School Board of the Southern Baptist Convention.

A Grammar of the Greek New Testament in the Light of Historical Research: copyright 1934 by Ella Broadus Robertson, printed by Broadman Press in Nashville, Tennessee.

Marvin J. Rosenthal: the former director of the Friends of Israel Gospel Ministry, and current editor of Zion’s Fire. His series on the Book of Hebrews provided a wonderful Jewish aspect in my study of Hebrews.

John F. Strombeck: Bible Conference speaker and Christian writer. His book: So Great Salvation: copyright 1940 by Strombeck Agency, Inc.

R. B. Thieme, Jr., former pastor and international Bible teacher. His three year in-depth study of the Book of Hebrews formed the basis for my entire study of Hebrews. His expertise in the original languages served as a constant reminder of the importance of understanding the Greek and the Hebrew in interpreting the sacred Scriptures.

“Reversionism” by R. B. Thieme, Jr., copyright 1977: page 95.

Richard Chenevix Trench, D.D (Archbishop Trench): a well known philologist who established himself by The Study of Words. His book: Synonyms of the New Testament: printed by Associated Publishers, Grand Rapids, Michigan.

Merrill F. Unger: Unger's Bible Dictionary: copyright 1957 by Moody Bible Institute of Chicago.

Marvin R Vincent: former professor at Union Theological Seminary, New York City. His commentary: Vincent's Word Studies of the New Testament, volume IV The Epistle to the Hebrews: Printed by MacDonald Publishing Company, McLean, Virginia.

W. E. Vine: Expository Dictionary of New Testament Words: published by Fleming H. Revell Company in 1966.

Kenneth S. Wuest: former professor of New Testament Greek at Moody Bible Institute. His commentary: "Word Studies from the Greek New Testament," volume I, The Epistle to the Hebrews: copyright 1947 by William B. Eerdmans Publishing Company Company.

Word Studies in the Epistle to the Hebrews

by Robert H. Kreger

*Published and distributed by
the Metropolitan Bible Church
P.O. Box 721386
Berkley, Michigan 48072:*

All rights reserved.

Webpage: <http://www.metrobiblechurch.com>